

Lê Hoàng An (Chủ biên)
Nguyễn Thị Hoàng Lan – Quang Thị Hoàn

THIẾT KẾ BÀI GIẢNG
TIẾNG
ANH

6

TẬP 1

(Tái bản lần thứ nhất)

NHÀ XUẤT BẢN GIÁO DỤC VIỆT NAM

MỤC LỤC

Lời nói đầu	3
Giáo án 1: Unit 1: My new school	4
Giáo án 2: Unit 1: My new school	9
Giáo án 3: Unit 1: My new school	12
Giáo án 4: Unit 1: My new school	16
Giáo án 5: Unit 1: My new school	18
Giáo án 6: Unit 1: My new school	21
Giáo án 7: Unit 1: My new school	24
Giáo án 1: Unit 2: My home	27
Giáo án 2: Unit 2: My home	34
Giáo án 3: Unit 2: My home	38
Giáo án 4: Unit 2: My home	41
Giáo án 5: Unit 2: My home	44
Giáo án 6: Unit 2: My home	47
Giáo án 7: Unit 2: My home	51
Giáo án 1: Unit 3: My friends	55
Giáo án 2: Unit 3: My friends	60
Giáo án 3: Unit 3: My friends	65
Giáo án 4: Unit 3: My friends	68
Giáo án 5: Unit 3: My friends	72
Giáo án 6: Unit 3: My friends	76
Giáo án 7: Unit 3: My friends	80
Giáo án 1: Unit 4: My neighbourhood	85
Giáo án 2: Unit 4: My neighbourhood	89
Giáo án 3: Unit 4: My neighbourhood	92
Giáo án 4: Unit 4: My neighbourhood	96
Giáo án 5: Unit 4: My neighbourhood	99
Giáo án 6: Unit 4: My neighbourhood	103
Giáo án 7: Unit 4: My neighbourhood	107
Giáo án 1: Unit 5: Natural Wonders of the World	111
Giáo án 2: Unit 5: Natural Wonders of the World	116
Giáo án 3: Unit 5: Natural Wonders of the World	119
Giáo án 4: Unit 5: Natural Wonders of the World	123
Giáo án 5: Unit 5: Natural Wonders of the World	126
Giáo án 6: Unit 5: Natural Wonders of the World	130
Giáo án 7: Unit 5: Natural Wonders of the World	134
Giáo án 1: Unit 6: Our Tet holiday	138
Giáo án 2: Unit 6: Our Tet holiday	142
Giáo án 3: Unit 6: Our Tet holiday	147
Giáo án 4: Unit 6: Our Tet holiday	152
Giáo án 5: Unit 6: Our Tet holiday	156
Giáo án 6: Unit 6: Our Tet holiday	161
Giáo án 7: Unit 6: Our Tet holiday	163

LỜI NÓI ĐẦU

Thiết kế Bài giảng Tiếng Anh 6 - 9 là bộ sách được biên soạn dành cho giáo viên dạy bộ sách giáo khoa Tiếng Anh Trung học cơ sở theo chương trình mới của Bộ Giáo dục và Đào tạo. Nội dung cuốn sách bao gồm tập hợp các bài giảng mẫu được thiết kế theo nội dung các bài học trong sách giáo khoa Tiếng Anh 6 - 9.

Phương pháp và tiến trình dạy học được biên soạn trong các bài giảng mẫu nhằm phát huy tính tích cực và chủ động của học sinh và phù hợp với tâm lí lứa tuổi của học sinh trung học.

Đây là tài liệu rất hữu ích cho giáo viên trong việc cung cấp giáo án mẫu hoặc dựa vào đó, GV có thể tự thiết kế bài giảng của mình cho mỗi đơn vị kiến thức.

Cụ thể mỗi bài soạn gồm những nội dung sau:

- Các hoạt động có nhiều phương án cho GV lựa chọn để phù hợp với trình độ của học sinh và điều kiện lớp học;
- Phân bố thời gian chi tiết các bước lên lớp giúp GV chủ động và linh hoạt trong tổ chức dạy học;
- Phần hướng dẫn cho giáo viên được biên soạn bằng tiếng Việt dễ hiểu, và đặc biệt, toàn bộ lời dẫn của giáo viên được viết cụ thể sinh động bằng tiếng Anh và được liên kết logic;
- Cuối mỗi bài dạy đều có phần trình bày bảng;
- Sách có kèm đĩa chứa phần mềm trò chơi và video clip minh hoạ phù hợp với nội dung bài giảng.

Bộ sách **Thiết kế Bài giảng Tiếng Anh 6 - 9** là công trình đúc kết sáng kiến kinh nghiệm giảng dạy nhiều năm qua của đội ngũ các giáo viên giỏi nhằm hỗ trợ hiệu quả trong quá trình dạy và học theo chương trình và sách giáo khoa mới.

Chúng tôi xin tiếp thu các ý kiến đóng góp của giáo viên và bạn đọc để những lần tái bản sau cuốn sách được hoàn thiện hơn.

Các tác giả

Giáo án 1: Unit 1: My new school

LESSON 1: GETTING STARTED

A special day

Thời gian: 45 phút

I. Objectives:

By the end of the lesson, students can:

- be acquainted with the new school environment
- use the lexical items related to the topic 'My new school'
- use the present simple and the present continuous
- talk about school objects and school activities

II. Procedures: Các bước tiến hành

Hoạt động 1: Warm-up (3 to 5 minutes)

Để dẫn dắt học sinh vào không khí và nội dung bài học, giáo viên có thể lựa chọn các phương án sau để cho học sinh hoạt động:

Phương án 1: Chơi trò chơi 'Memorising game'



Luật chơi:

- Cả lớp chia thành hai đội Cats và Dogs, gặp sách lại.
- GV cho lớp xem bức tranh trang 10 (đã được phóng to A2 hoặc sử dụng màn hình máy chiếu) trong 30 giây.
- HS ghi nhớ nội dung bức tranh.

• GV giấu tranh đi, hỏi năm câu hỏi về nội dung tranh.

• Đội nào có câu trả lời rung chuông hoặc giơ tay.

Lời dẫn:

– Now, the whole class, today is your very first day to learn English together, you must be very eager. Would you like to play a game to warm us up?

– Yes, alright. All of you are very excited now. Let's play the game 'Memorising'.

– The class is divided into 2 teams Cats and Dogs.

– Look at the picture in 30 seconds, trying to remember its content.

– Then I will ask you 5 questions about it. Who answers correctly and faster is the winner.

– Are you ready?

– OK, great. Let's look at this very beautiful picture!

(HS nhìn tranh trong 30 giây)

Lời dẫn:

– OK, boys and girls, time's up.

– It's time to show your talent.

– My first question is: How many people are there in the picture? (4)

– Good job, Nam is correct.

– Now, the second question is: What is the girl wearing? (She is wearing a school uniform)

– Great, Vy, you have a good memory. And here is the 3rd question: Is the boy at the table eating noodles? (No, he isn't)

– Well done, Nhi, I will not let you wait more, my 4th question is: What colour is the girl's school bag? (Brown)

– Excellent Tuan, and the last chance for you now, all of you must try your best. Who are smiling? (All of them)

– Well well, you did very well in this team. Cats have 3 right answers, Dogs have 2. So the winner is Cats. A very big applause for them please.

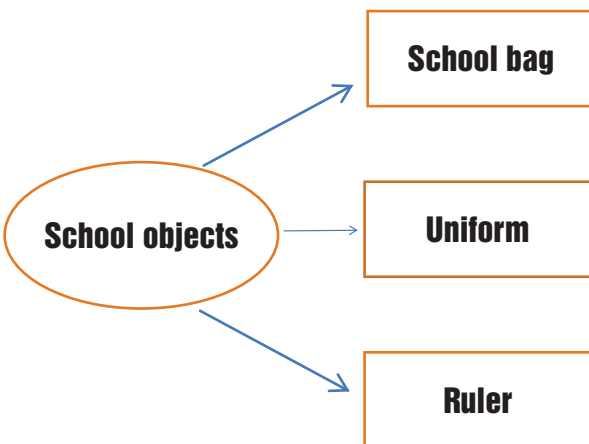
Phương án 2: Chơi trò chơi 'Brainstorming'

Luật chơi:

- Cả lớp chia thành hai đội Cats và Dogs.
- GV cho chủ đề SCHOOL OBJECTS lên bảng.
- Mỗi đội cử một bạn lên viết một đồ vật rồi chuyển phần cho bạn khác.
- Chơi trong vòng một phút.
- Đội nào viết đúng và nhiều hơn sẽ thắng cuộc.

Lời dẫn:

- Now, the whole class, today is your very first day to learn English together, you must be very eager. Would you like to play a game to warm us up?
- Yes, alright. All of you are very excited now. Let's play the game 'Brainstorming'.
- The class is divided into 2 teams Cats and Dogs.
- Each member of a team will write one name of the school object in turn.
- I give you 1 minute.
- Who writes more words correctly and faster will be the winner. Are you ready?



Lời dẫn:

- OK, boys and girls, time's up.
- It's time to see how many things you can write.
- Wow, I am so surprised to see that you have already known so many school objects.
- In this lesson, you will have a chance to learn some more.

Hoạt động 2: Elicit the dialogue (10 minutes)

Phong: Oh, someone's knocking at the door.

Phong's Mum: Hi, Vy. You're early. Phong's having breakfast.

Vy: Hi, Mrs Nguyen. Oh dear, I'm sorry. I'm excited about our first day at school.

Phong's Mum: Ha ha, I see. Please come in.

Vy: Hi, Phong. Are you ready?

Phong: Yes, just a minute.

Vy: Oh, I have a new friend. This is Duy.

Phong: Hi, Duy. Nice to meet you.

Duy: Hi, Phong. Nice to meet you too. I live here now. I go to the same school as you.

Phong: That's good. School will be great - you'll see. Hmm, your schoolbag looks heavy.

Duy: Yes, it is. I have new notebooks, a new calculator, and new pens.

Phong: And you're wearing the new uniform Duy. You look smart!

Duy: Thanks, Phong.

Phong: Let me put on my uniform too. Then we can go.

Vy: Sure, Phong.

Lời dẫn:

– Everyone, look at this picture now, can you guess who Phong, Duy and Vy are?

– What is Phong doing?

– What is Vy doing?

– Why are they so happy?

– Yes, because it is a very special day for them.

(Giáo viên viết từ SPECIAL lên bảng)

– Why are they so happy?

– Now, let's listen and find out.

(Giáo viên bật đĩa cho học sinh nghe hội thoại 2 lần sau đó mời 4 bạn lên đọc lại hội thoại)

Bài tập 1a.

■ Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)?

1. Vy and Duy are early.
2. Phong is eating.
3. Duy is Phong's friend.
4. Duy lives near Phong.
5. Phong is wearing a school uniform.

Lời dẫn:

– So you have listened to the dialogue, let’s see if you can understand it well by deciding whether these statements are true or not.

– I would like you to do individually then you can discuss with your partner next to you.

HS làm cá nhân sau đó sẽ thảo luận với bạn bên cạnh.

Key: 1.T 2.T 3.F 4.T 5.F

Bài tập 1b

b Find these expressions in the conversation. Check what they mean.

- 1. Oh dear. 2. You’ll see.
- 3. Come in. 4. Sure.

Lời dẫn:

– You must now understand the dialogue, let’s do some more study to find the synonyms to these expressions.

– Now, let’s check; Oh dear – When do you use this?

– True, you use this to express a negative surprise, for example, you carelessly break a cup or a bowl, your mum can say this to you.

– How about ‘You’ll see’? Correct, it means You will find out.

– And of course the expression ‘Come in’ everybody must know, we want to invite sb in.

– And the last one ‘Sure’ means Certainly or Of course.

Bài tập 1c

c Work in pairs. Create short role-plays with the expressions. Then practise them.

Example:

A: Oh dear. I forgot my calculator.

B: That’s OK, you can borrow mine.

A: Thank you.

Lời dẫn:

– You are clear about the meaning of these expressions, let’s see if you can apply them in real situations daily around you.

– Now An, please stand up, talk to me:

T: Oh dear, I forgot my ruler.

Ann: Don’t worry, you can use mine.

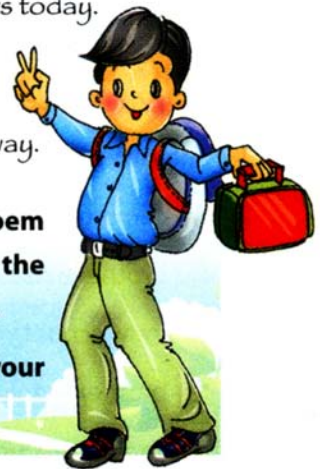
T: Thank you.

Now, I would like you to work in pairs and role-play the same conversation.

Hoạt động 3: Listen and read the poem (5 minutes)

2 Listen and read the following poem.

Get up, Nam
 Get up, Nam
 You’re going back to school
 Your friends are going back to school, too.
 The new school year starts today.
 You’ve got nice shoes
 You’ve got new pens
 Your friends are on their way.



a Work in pairs. Write a poem about your partner. Use the poem above to help you.

b Now read the poem to your partner.

Lời dẫn:

– I am sure some of you here once dreamt of making a poem yourselves. Poems make life more interesting. So first, let’s listen to a very lovely poem about Nam.

– And what I would like you to do now is to look at your partner and find out what new things he or she gets then write a poem about him or her. Who has the nicest poem will get mark 10 from me.

– Time is yours now.

– Wow, you can be famous poets in the future, I am so proud of you.

Hoạt động 4: Match the words with the school things (10 minutes)

3 Match the words with the school things. Then listen and repeat.

1. _____

2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____

5. _____ 6. _____ 7. _____

8. _____ 9. _____ 10. _____

a. bicycle	f. notebook
b. pencil sharpener	g. ruler
c. calculator	h. textbook
d. rubber	i. pencil case
e. compass	j. schoolbag

Lời dẫn:

– After showing your potential to be a great poet, now you will have a chance to become a linguist by matching words with school things.

– I have two sets of cards, one includes pictures of school things and the other includes their names. Let's match as fast as possible to have the correct pair. Are you ready?

Phương án 2: Chơi trò chơi 'Odd one in'

Luật chơi:

- GV có một hộp chứa hình vẽ các đồ vật.
- Một bạn trong lớp sẽ nhắc từng đồ vật trong hộp lên, hai đội bên dưới sẽ nói tên của đồ vật đó.
- Đội nào đúng và nhanh hơn sẽ thắng cuộc.

Lời dẫn:

– After showing your potential to be a great poet, now you will have a chance to become a linguist by matching words with school things.

– I have a box of school things. I would like Tam to come here to pick up one thing one by one.

– You will call out the name of that thing as fast as possible.

– Ready, now Tam, come here to start the game please.

Key:

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------|
| 1–b pencil sharpener | 2–e compass |
| 3–j school bag | 4–d rubber |
| 5–c calculator | 6–i pencil case |
| 7–f notebook | 8–a bicycle |
| 9–g ruler | 10–h textbook |

Giáo viên có thể lựa chọn 1 trong 2 phương án:

Phương án 1: Chơi trò chơi 'Pelmanism'

Luật chơi:

- Cả lớp chia thành hai đội Cats và Dogs.
- GV có thể dùng phần mềm tạo sẵn trong đĩa nếu dùng máy tính (có sẵn trong đĩa CD kèm theo sách) hoặc có thể chơi trên bảng bằng việc cắt 2 bộ cards. Bộ 1 là các bức hình đồ vật, bộ 2 là tên của các đồ vật xáo trộn được úp lại trên bảng.
- Ba thành viên của hai đội lên kết hợp đúng đôi tranh và từ.
- Đội nào nối đúng và nhanh hơn sẽ thắng cuộc.

Hoạt động 5: Look around the class (5 minutes)

HS làm việc nhóm 4 tìm ra những đồ vật trong lớp không có trong bài học, và thảo luận tên của các đồ vật đó, nếu không biết các em có thể hỏi thầy/cô.

Đội Cats làm thơ với các đồ vật đó.

Đội Dogs lập hội thoại sử dụng các cụm từ trong bài 1b.

Lời dẫn:

– No doubt, you guys are now experts in school things. But it's not all I want you to know, please look around the class to see things we haven't learnt in the lesson.

- I would like you to work in groups of 4.
- Cats will make poems with those school things.
- Dogs will make dialogues using the expressions in 1b.

Kết bài (2 minutes)

- Now tell me what you have learnt today, Nhi please!
- Yes, you are right, through the lesson we can now know names of so many school things. Besides, you know how to use them in real daily conversations. Please practise more with your partner after school, OK?
- Thanks and see you again.

Homework (2 minutes)

1. Write the poem in the notebook.
2. Make 2 dialogues using the expressions in 1b.

Trình bày bảng

Monday, May 25th, 2015

Unit 1 – My new school

Lesson 1 – Getting started – A special day

I. Brainstorming

II. Listen and read

1. True / False statements
2. Listen and read the poem
3. Match words with school things
4. Find out new school things

III. Homework

Giáo án 2: Unit 1: My new school

LESSON 2: A CLOSER LOOK 1

I. Objectives:

By the end of the lesson, students can:

- use the lexical items related to the topic 'My new school'
- pronounce correctly the sounds /əʊ/ and /ʌ/ in isolation and in context
- use the combinations: *to study, to have, to do, to play* + Noun

II. Procedures: Các bước tiến hành

Hoạt động 1: Warm-up (3 to 5 minutes)

Phương án 1: Chơi trò chơi 'Brainstorming'

Luật chơi:

• GV viết hai từ BREAKFAST và MATH lên bảng, yêu cầu HS lên viết tất cả các động từ đi với hai từ trên.

Lời dẫn:

– Today, you seem to be very happy. Let's work your brain to make you happier, is it OK?

– Now, every day, we do a lot of activities such as eating food or learning new subjects. So I would like you to list all the verbs which can go with these two words: BREAKFAST – MATH.

Lời dẫn:

– OK, boys and girls, time's up. It's time to show how rich your vocabulary is.

– With 'BREAKFAST', the verbs that can go with are: HAVE – EAT – GET – COOK – PREPARE – MAKE – ENJOY, etc....

– With 'MATH', the verbs that can go with are: HAVE – DO – STUDY – LEARN – SOLVE – LOVE – LIKE – HATE, etc....

Phương án 2: Chơi trò chơi 'Miming'

Luật chơi:

• GV nói nhỏ vào tai một học sinh một trong những hành động : *play football, listen to music, skip rope, do exercises, do homework, eat noodles, drink water.* Bạn đó biểu diễn hành động và hỏi cả lớp: What am I doing?

• HS nào đoán đúng sẽ được chơi tiếp.

Lời dẫn:

– Now I will whisper something into your ear, you have to mime that action for your friends to guess what you are doing.

– Who guesses correctly will have a chance to mime next.

Hoạt động 2: Teaching new words (10 minutes)

Lời dẫn:

– Everyone, you have shown me that your vocabulary is quite rich, but now, let's make it even richer by learning some more new words, alright?

New words:

1. physics (n): (visual)
2. judo (n): (visual)
3. school lunch (n.phr.): (visual)
4. science (n): What does Isaac Newton or Albert Einstein do?

(HS có thể trả lời bằng Tiếng Việt – Họ nghiên cứu khoa học)

Checking technique:

Phương án 1: Rub out and remember


Phương án 2: What and Where

Phương án 3: Slap the board

...

Hoạt động 3: Practice (30 minutes)

1 Listen and repeat the words.



Listen and repeat the words.

physics	exercise
English	vocabulary
history	football
homework	lessons
judo	music
school lunch	science


2 Work in pairs. Put the words in 1 into groups.

(GV cho HS làm việc đôi, cho các từ ở bài 1 vào đúng cột, và khơi gợi để HS bổ sung thêm danh từ kết hợp với bốn động từ trong bảng: play, do, have, study.

2 Work in pairs. Put the words in 1 into groups.

play	do	have	study

Can you add more nouns to the groups?



Key:

play	do
football	homework
music	judo
games	exercise
volleyball	aerobics
	chores
	an exam
have	study
school lunch	physics
lessons	English
Math	history
Literature	vocabulary
dinner	science

3 Put one of these words in each blank.

lessons football
 science judo
 homework

- I do _____ with my friend, Vy.
- Duy plays _____ for the school team.
- All the _____ at my new school are interesting.
- They are healthy. They do _____ every day.
- I study maths, English and _____ on Mondays.

Key:

- homework
- football
- lessons
- judo
- science

4 Write sentences about yourself using the combinations above.

(GV khuyến khích học sinh viết càng nhiều càng tốt)

Every week, we have English lessons on Monday and Tuesday...

Pronunciation of /əʊ/ and /ʌ/ sounds

GV cho HS xem clip về cách phát âm của hai âm sau đó cho HS luyện tập phát âm sao cho chính xác bằng bài 5, 6 và 7.

Clip 1: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=wCpiETKC8aw>

Clip 2: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=zUpF0pYoTZ8&spfreload=10>



5 Listen and repeat. Pay attention to the sounds /əʊ/ and /ʌ/.

1. /əʊ/: judo going homework open
2. /ʌ/: brother Monday mother month

6 Listen to the words and put them into two groups.

/əʊ/	/ʌ/	
_____	_____	some
_____	_____	rode
_____	_____	don't
_____	_____	hope
_____	_____	Monday
_____	_____	homework
_____	_____	month
_____	_____	come
_____	_____	post
_____	_____	one

7 Listen and repeat. Underline the sounds /əʊ/ and /ʌ/ you hear.

1. They are going to open a new library.
2. I'm coming home from school.
3. His brother eats lunch in the school canteen.
4. The new school year starts next month.
5. My brother is doing his homework.
6. He goes to the judo club every Sunday.

Nếu còn thời gian, GV có thể cho HS chơi thêm một trò chơi:

Identifying correct sound

GV đọc các từ có chứa hai âm trên, gọi hai HS lên bảng và nói to âm của từ đó là /əʊ/ hay /ʌ/.

Strut, mud, love, blood, goat, show, no, slow, mother, another...

Nếu không còn thời gian, GV có thể chuyển sang hoạt động sau:

Write-it-up

Yêu cầu HS viết về bản thân sử dụng bốn động từ PLAY, HAVE, DO, STUDY và từ có chứa 2 âm /əʊ/ và /ʌ/, sau đó trao đổi với bạn mình (đôi hoặc nhóm).

Ví dụ: Every day, I go to the playground to play football with my friend. (âm /əʊ/ go – động từ *play*)

At 6 a.m. every day, I do morning exercise with my mother. (âm /ʌ/ mother – động từ *do*)

Homework (2 minutes)

1. Practise saying words that have sounds /əʊ/ and /ʌ/.
2. Rewrite all the sentences in WRITE-IT-UP at home.

Trình bày bảng

Monday, May 25th , 2015

Unit 1 – My new school

Lesson 2 – A closer look 1

I. Miming

II. New words

- physics (n)
- judo (n)
- school lunch (n. phr.)
- science (n)

III. Practice

1. Listen and repeat the words.
2. Work in pairs. Put the words in 1 into groups.
3. Put one of these words in each blank.
4. Write sentences about yourself using the combinations above.

IV. Pronunciation of /əʊ/ and /ʌ/ sounds

V. Homework

Giáo án 3: Unit 1: My new school

LESSON 3: A CLOSER LOOK 2

I. Objectives:

By the end of the lesson, students can:

- use the present simple and present continuous tenses
- talk about school activities, subjects and what students do at school

II. Procedures: Các bước tiến hành

Hoạt động 1: Warm-up (3 to 5 minutes)

Phương án 1: Small interview

GV hỏi về các hoạt động thường ngày của học sinh.

Lời dẫn:

- *We have been together for the past one week. Now I would like to know about you “guys” better, is that OK?*
- *Now, Vy, what do you often do in the morning?*
- *Tu, what do you often do at school?*
- *Loc, what do you often do after school?*

Phương án 2: Chơi trò chơi ‘Chain game’

Luật chơi:

- Chơi nhóm 6 hoặc 8, HS thứ 1 bắt đầu bằng: Every day, I wake up.
- HS thứ 2 nói lại câu 1 và bổ sung câu mới: Every day, I wake up and I brush my teeth.
- HS thứ 3 nhắc lại câu 1, 2 và bổ sung câu mới: Every day, I wake up and I brush my teeth, then I wash my face.
- Làm tương tự cho đến HS cuối.

Lời dẫn:

- *Now I’d like you to work in groups of 8. The first student begins with ‘I wake up’.*
- *The next one repeats ‘I wake up’ and adds your own sentence. Eg. I wake up and I brush my teeth.*

– *Continue as what you have done with the rest of 6 students.*

Hoạt động 2: Practice with present simple tense (18 minutes)

Lời dẫn:

- *We have just played a very interesting game; can you tell me which tense has just been used?*
- *Correct, it is the present simple tense. Why do we use that?*
- *Great, because we talk about our daily routine.*

Elicit Present Simple Tense

Lời dẫn:

- *About daily routine, now answer my question, Tuan: Do you brush your teeth every morning?*
- *Good, that’s what we should do daily, now Nga, please answer me: Does Tuan brush his teeth every morning?*
- *Yes, he does. So Tuan brushes his teeth every morning.*
- *So we need to remember to add S or ES when the subject is HE or SHE or IT.*

GV cho HS đọc phần REMEMBER trang 9 và tóm tắt trên bảng.

I – You – We – They + V → S + don’t + V → Do + S + V?

He – She – It + V-s / V-es → S + doesn’t + V → Does + S + V?

Check: Form – Meaning – Use – Pronunciation

1. We say *Tuan brush* or *Tuan brushes*? / We say *Do Tuan go*? or *Does Tuan go*?
2. When do we use the Present Simple Tense?
3. We say /dʌz/ or /dʌ/?

1 Write the correct form of the verbs.

GV cho HS làm việc cá nhân.



Miss Nguyen: Tell us about yourself Duy.

Duy: Sure! I live near here now. This is my new school. Wow! It (1. have) _____ a large playground.

Miss Nguyen: ___ you ___ (2. have) any new friends?

Duy: Yes. I _____ (3. love) my new school and my new friends, Vy and Phong.

Miss Nguyen: ___ Vy ___ (4. walk) to school with you?

Duy: Well, we often _____ (5. ride) our bicycles to school.

Miss Nguyen: Who's your teacher?

Duy: My teacher is Mr Quang. He's great. He _____ (6. teach) me English.

Miss Nguyen: What do you usually do at break time?

Duy: I play football but my friend Phong _____ (7. not play) football. He _____ (8. read) in the library.

Miss Nguyen: What time do you go home?

Duy: I _____ (9. go) home at 4 o'clock every day. Then I _____ (10. do) my homework.

Miss Nguyen: Thank you.

Key:

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. has | 2. do you have |
| 3. love | 4. does Vy walk |
| 5. ride | 6. teaches |
| 7. doesn't play | 8. reads |
| 9. go | 10. do |

2 Correct the sentences.

GV cho HS làm việc cá nhân.

- Duy doesn't live near here.
- Duy doesn't like his new school.
- Vy and Duy walk to school.
- Mr Quang teaches Duy science.
- At break time, Phong plays football.

Key:

- Duy lives near here.
- Duy likes/loves his new school.
- Vy and Duy ride to school.
- Mr Quang teaches Duy English.
- At break time, Phong reads in the library.

3 Interview your partner.

GV cho HS làm việc đôi, đặt câu hỏi và phỏng vấn nhau.

- you/ride your bicycle/to school
- you/read/in the library/at break time
- you/like/your new school
- your friends/go to school/with you
- you/do your homework/after school

Hoạt động 3: Practice with present continuous tense (20 minutes)

Elicit Present Continuous Tense



Lời dẫn:

– Now, everyone, look at this picture again and tell me: What is Phong doing?

– Right, he is having breakfast.

– How about his mother? What is she doing?

– She is talking to Lan and Vy.

– So what tense have we just used? – Present Continuous tense.

GV viết tóm tắt cấu trúc của *Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn* lên bảng.

S + is/am/are + V-ing

S + isn't / am not / aren't + V-ing

Am, Is, Are + S + V-ing? → Yes, S + be / No, + S + be not

Check: Form – Meaning – Use – Pronunciation

1. We say *Phong is having breakfast* or *Phong are having breakfast*?

2. We say *I am learning English* or *I learning English*?

3. When do we use the Present Continuous Tense?

...

5 Complete the sentences.

1. I (not play) _____ football now. I'm tired.
2. Shh! They (study) _____ in the library.
3. Vy and Phong (not do) _____ their homework.
4. Now I (have) _____ an English lesson with Mr Lee.
5. Phong, Vy and Duy (ride) _____ their bicycles to school now.

Key:

- | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1. am not playing | 2. are studying |
| 3. aren't doing | 4. am having |
| 5. are riding | |

GV chốt lại sự khác nhau giữa 2 thì.

Remember!

When something often happens or is fixed: the present simple

When something is happening now: the present continuous



6 Choose the correct tense.

GV hỏi học sinh các dấu hiệu nhận biết về sự khác nhau giữa 2 thì:

– Ví dụ hiện tại đơn đi với *now, every day, on Tuesday...*

– Hiện tại tiếp diễn đi với *at the moment, at present, Look! ...*



1. My family *have/are having* dinner now.
2. Mai *wears/is wearing* her uniform on Mondays and Saturdays.
3. The school year in Viet Nam *starts/is starting* on Sep 5th.
4. Now Duong *watches/ is watching* Ice Age on video.
5. Look! The girls *skip/are skipping* in the schoolyard.

Key:

- | | | |
|----------------|-----------------|-----------|
| 1. are having | 2. wears | 3. starts |
| 4. is watching | 5. are skipping | |

7 Underline things that often happen or are fixed.

Hi Trang,

How are you? This is the first week at my new school. Now, I'm doing my homework in the library. I have lots to do already!

I have lots of friends and they are all nice to me. We study many subjects – maths, science, and English of course!

I have a new uniform, but I don't wear it every day (only on Mondays and Saturdays). I have lessons in the morning. In the afternoon, I read books in the library or do sports in the playground. How is your new school? Do you study the same subjects as me? Do you play badminton with your friends?

School starts again next Monday. It's late now so I have to go home.

Please write soon.

Love,
Vy

8 Write it up or Speak it out.



Với HS các lớp bình thường, GV cho các em viết về sự khác nhau giữa HS và bạn Vy.

Với HS các lớp khá, GV cho các em nói về sự khác nhau giữa HS và bạn Vy.

Lời dẫn:

– You have just known some interesting things about Vy. Now let's compare you with Vy to find out differences and tell us. As I know, for example, you guys wear school uniforms the whole week while Vy only wears uniforms on Mondays and Saturdays.

Homework (2 minutes)

1. Write about what your father/ mother does every day.
2. Write about what is happening around you at 8 p.m.

Trình bày bảng

Monday, May 25th , 2015

Unit 1 – My new school

Lesson 3 – A closer look 2

I. Chain Game

II. Grammar

1. Present Simple Tense

I – You – We – They + V → S + don't + V → Do + S + V?

He – She – It + V-s / V-es → S + doesn't + V → Does + S + V?

2. Present Continuous Tense

S + is/am/are + V-ing

S + isn't / am not / aren't + V-ing

Am, Is, Are + S + V-ing? → Yes, S + be / No, S + be not

III. Practice

IV. Homework

Giáo án 4: Unit 1: My new school

LESSON 4: COMMUNICATION

I. Objectives:

By the end of the lesson, students can:

- use the lexical items related to the topic 'My new school'
- ask appropriate questions when making new friends at a new school
- know what qualities a good friend should have

II. Procedures: Các bước tiến hành

Hoạt động 1: Warm-up (3 to 5 minutes)

Phương án 1: Chơi trò chơi 'Are you my best friend?'

GV gọi hai đến ba cặp bạn thân trong lớp (student A and student B), đưa ra các câu hỏi về bạn A. Bạn A viết ra giấy câu trả lời. Bạn B nói ra câu trả lời. Nếu trùng nhau, đó là đôi bạn hiểu nhau. GV đưa ra lời khen động viên HS sau khi các em thực hành.

Lời dẫn:

– Nobody can deny that friendship is one of the most important relationships. And I know we have some very good friendship here. Let's find out if you really understand each other by answering some questions. If they are the same, it means you really are good friends, if not; try your best to get to know each other better, OK?

– Tuan writes down the answers on a paper, Hoan speaks out the answers.

– Now, Hoan and Tuan, come here please. The questions are about Tuan.

1. What color does Tuan like the best?
2. When is Tuan's birthday?
3. How many brothers and sisters does Tuan have?
4. Which class at primary school does Tuan go to?
5. What is Tuan's favorite song?

Phương án 2: Chơi trò chơi 'Who knows more?'

Luật chơi:

- Chơi nhóm 6 hoặc 8, viết tên các đôi bạn thân (tình bạn đẹp) nổi tiếng ở Việt Nam và trên thế giới.

Lời dẫn:

– Now I'd like you to work in groups of 8. Please write down as many as you know names of the best friends, both in Viet Nam and in the world.

– Suggested answers from teacher (Teacher can give some interesting facts about that great friendship as well): Bác Hồ – Bác Tôn, Lưu Bình – Dương Lễ, David – Johnathan, K. Marx – Engels, etc. . .

Hoạt động 2: Extra Vocabulary (2 minutes)

1. pocket money (n. phr.): (explanation)

How do you call the money that your father or mother gives you for daily use, eg. buying food for breakfast or parking bicycles => pocket money

2. share (n, v): (situation) What action can you say to describe the situation when you give your food to some homeless people? or (visual). GV cầm một cái bánh cắt ra và chia cho HS => name the action?

Hoạt động 3: Game (Making friends) – 8 minutes

1 Game: Making friends

Read and tick (✓) the questions you think are suitable to ask a new friend at school.

1. Are you from around here?
2. Do you like pop music?
3. How much pocket money do you get?
4. What is your favourite subject at school?
5. Are you hungry?
6. Do you play football?
7. How do you get to school every day?
8. Where do you go shopping?



- GV cho HS thảo luận nhóm 4, lựa chọn các câu hỏi phù hợp khi kết bạn mới.
- Thảo luận xong, mỗi nhóm nghĩ thêm hai câu hỏi để kết bạn.
- GV đặt tên HS theo màu: xanh, đỏ, tím, vàng.
- Cho HS hình thành nhóm mới theo màu sắc. Các thành viên của nhóm mới sẽ giới thiệu hai câu của mình cho nhóm → Mỗi nhóm sẽ có tám câu hỏi.

Lời dẫn:

- First, work in groups of 4.
- Each group thinks of 2 more questions to add to the list.
- Now, let me name you: Blue – Red – Purple – Yellow.
- Let’s form a new group now, all the Blues get together, all the Reds, Purples and Yellows do the same.
- Please tell your new group 2 questions you just added.

Hoạt động 4: Friendship quiz

- GV cho HS nêu các phẩm chất của một người bạn tốt trong lớp.

Lời dẫn:

We have just discussed a lot about friendship, now please show me what qualities a good friend often has.

Suggested answers:

CARING, TRUSTFUL, LOYAL, SELFLESS, FORGIVING, STRAIGHTFORWARD.....

- GV cho HS làm việc nhóm 5, phỏng vấn các bạn còn lại trong nhóm.

ARE YOU A GOOD FRIEND IN CLASS?

- Do you remember all your new classmates' names? Yes No
- Do you help your teacher in the class? Yes No
- Do you share things with your classmates? Yes No
- Do you keep quiet when your teacher is talking? Yes No
- Do you play with your classmates at break time? Yes No
- Do you help your classmates with their homework? Yes No
- Do you travel to school with your classmates? Yes No
- Do you listen when your classmates are talking? Yes No

Work in groups. Take turns to interview the others. Use the questions.

Class presentation. Are they good friends in class? Tell the class about them.

Lời dẫn:

Now, in 5 please, firstly, interview your partners to see if they are good friends in class or not.

- Đại diện của mỗi nhóm lên giới thiệu về những người bạn tốt của mình, giải thích vì sao bạn đó coi họ là bạn tốt.

Lời dẫn:

Now, I would like one member of a group to come to the board and introduce us your good friends, and remember to tell us why you consider they are good friends of yours.

- GV cho HS viết về những câu danh ngôn về tình bạn.

Lời dẫn:

To end up our discussion on friendship, please together, think of well-known quotes about friendship.

Suggested answers:

- Friends are forever.
- Friend in need is a friend indeed.
- “A friend is someone who knows all about you and still loves you”. Elbert Hubbard
- “I would rather walk with a friend in the dark, than alone in the light”. Helen Keller
- “What is a friend? A single soul dwelling in two bodies”. Aristotle
- ...

Homework (2 minutes)

- Write about your best friend (his/her appearance, qualities of a good friend that he/she has)
-

Trình bày bảng

Monday, May 25th , 2015
 Unit 1 – My new school
 Lesson 4 – Communication

I. Chain Game

II. New words

- share (n, v)
- pocket money (n. phr.)

III. Making friends game

IV. Friendship quiz

V. Homework

Giáo án 5: Unit 1: My new school

LESSON 5: SKILLS 1

I. Objectives:

By the end of the lesson, students can:

- use the lexical items related to the topic 'My new school'
- read for specific information about schools
- talk about different types of schools
- talk about the school that they like or don't like and the reasons for that

II. Procedures: Các bước tiến hành

Hoạt động 1: Warm-up (3 to 5 minutes)

Phương án 1: Chơi trò chơi 'Mutual understanding'

- Lớp chia thành hai đội
- Mỗi đội gửi đại diện một bạn lên bảng, mặt hướng xuống lớp (không được quay lại nhìn bảng, hoặc màn chiếu)
- GV lần lượt đưa ra các hình ảnh hoặc từ vựng

1. A library
2. A school yard (or a playground)
3. A uniform
4. A school garden
5. A girl
6. A boy
7. A teacher
8. A classroom ...

Tùy thuộc vào trình độ của HS, GV có thể đưa ra số lượng hình ảnh phù hợp (từ 4 đến 8).

Các bạn bên dưới sẽ giải thích bằng tiếng Anh cho bạn đó đoán được từ vừa giải thích.

Đội nào đoán được từ nhiều hơn và chính xác, đội đó thắng cuộc.







Lời dẫn:

– We have played quite a few games together; do you want to play another new game now?

– The game is "Mutual Understanding". One representative from each team comes to the board without looking at the screen, listening to the other members explaining words one by one. The one who guesses more words correctly is the winner.

– You have 1 minute to play this game.

Phương án 2: Chơi trò chơi 'Typhoons'

1 	2 How many classes are there in our school?	3 Does our school have a stadium?	4 
5 	6 	7 How many computer rooms does it have?	8 Which languages do students study here?
9 	10 	11 Name some clubs that our school has.	12 When was our school born?

Luật chơi:

- Lớp chia thành hai đội.
- GV chuẩn bị 4 đến 5 câu hỏi về trường mình. Đội nào trả lời đúng được 10 điểm, trả lời sai 0 điểm, chọn được mặt cười 10 điểm, chọn phải Typhoons, mất hết điểm.

Lời dẫn:

– We have played quite a few games together; do you want to play another new game now?

– The game is 'Typhoons'. I have 8 numbers: 4 questions, 1 luck, 1 bad luck and 2 typhoons. Answer a question correctly, you will get 10 points. Get a luck, you will get 10 points. Get 1 bad luck, you will lose 10 points. Get a typhoon, you will lose all the points.

– The questions are all about our school, so let's see how well you know about it.

GV có thể điều chỉnh nội dung câu hỏi phù hợp với trường mình dạy.

1. How many classes are there in our school?
2. Does our school have a stadium?
3. How many computer rooms does it have?
4. Which languages do students study here?
5. Name some clubs that our school has.

Phương án 3: Gather the class' ideas



PLC SYDNEY



HS gấp sách lại.

GV cho HS nhìn 3 bức tranh, và để HS đưa ra các ý tưởng về từng trường theo ý kiến của mình.

GV có thể cho HS làm nhóm 4, 5, 6.

GV khuyến khích HS đưa ra càng nhiều ý tưởng càng tốt.

Lời dẫn:

– Let's look at these 3 nice pictures of 3 schools. Give your ideas about these schools as many as possible.

– I'd like you to work in groups of 5 in 3 minutes please.

Suggested answers:

– PLC school can be the one for girls only because there is no boy in the picture.

– Vinabrita school can be a combination of Viet Nam and Britain, because Vina is short for Viet

Nam and Brita is short for Britain.

– The 3rd picture must be a school in Viet Nam because the girls are Vietnamese.

...

Hoạt động 2: Comprehension Reading (20 minutes)

1 Skimming the passage: (to get a general overview of the passage)

GV cho HS đọc lướt qua 3 bài đọc để hiểu nội dung khái quát, chỉ nên cho HS thời gian dưới 1 phút.

Lời dẫn:

– I would like you to quickly read through the 3 passages to get the main ideas.

– I give you 30 seconds.

VINABRITA SCHOOL is an international school for students from year 1 to year 12. It has big buildings and modern equipment. Every day, students learn English with English speaking teachers. In the afternoon, they join many interesting clubs. They play basketball, football and badminton. Some creative students do drawings and paintings in the art club.

PLC SYDNEY

(Presbyterian Ladies' College Sydney) is a school for girls in Sydney. It is a boarding school. Students study and live there. About 1,250 girls from age four (kindergarten) to age eighteen (Year 12) go to PLC Sydney. PLC Sydney has students from all over Australia and overseas. Here, students study subjects like maths, physics and English.

AN LAC LOWER SECONDARY SCHOOL

is in Bac Giang Province. It's a small school. It has 7 classes and 194 students. The school is surrounded by mountains and green fields. There is a computer room and a library. There is also a school garden and a playground. You can see some girls dancing in the playground.

2 Scanning the passage: (to locate specific information)

Với bài này, ta dùng luôn kỹ năng Scanning (đọc nhanh) để dạy từ mới hay còn gọi là *Get the meaning in context*.

New words:

- boarding school (n. phr.): It is a boarding school. Students study and live there.
- surrounded (adj): The school is surrounded by mountains and green fields.
- international (adj): Vinabrita is an international school. Students learn English with English speaking teachers.
- creative (adj): Some creative students do drawings and paintings in the art club.

Checking technique: Matching

boarding	quốc tế
surrounded	sáng tạo
international	bao quanh
creative	nội trú

3 Complete these sentences.

GV cho HS làm việc cá nhân.

- Students live and study in a _____ school. They only go home at weekends.
- _____ has an art club.
- There are girls' schools in _____.
- Around An Lac School, there are green fields and _____.
- At Vinabrita School, students learn English with _____.

Key:

- boarding
- Vinabrita
- Australia
- mountains
- English speaking teachers

Hoạt động 3: Speaking (10 minutes)

- 4 Which school would you like to go to? Why? First complete the table. Then discuss with your friends.**

Name of school	Reasons you like it	Reasons you don't like it

GV cho HS nhìn lại bài đọc và đưa ra thông tin về 3 trường, sau đó cho HS làm việc nhóm, thảo luận về trường mình thích nhất rồi đưa ra lí do.

Lời dẫn:

– Please refer back to the passages and give me some background of the 3 schools.

– Then, work in groups of 5, decide which school among these 3 you like to go to and explain the reasons why.

PLC Sydney (Fresbyterian Ladies' College Sydney): an international school for girls from kindergarten to year 12 in Sydney, Australia.

An Lac Lower Secondary School: a small school in a mountainous region in Son Dong Dist, Bac Giang Province.

Vinabrita School: an international school for students from year 1 to year 12 in Ha Noi.

GV gọi đại diện của các nhóm lên trình bày.

Hoạt động 4: Homework (Giao bài tập cho tiết Project)

Lời dẫn:

– Among the 3 schools, you guys have just chosen your favorite one. However, I am sure if you could decide how your school will be like, you would want to make it the ways you long for. So now, I would like you to work in groups of 6, think of your dream school. What facilities do you want it to have? What does it look like? Use the Internet or any kinds of materials to illustrate your ideas.

Trình bày bảng

Monday, May 25th , 2015

Unit 1 – My new school

Lesson 5 – Skills 1

I. Mutual Understanding

II. Reading

New words:

- boarding school (n. phr.)
- creative (adj)
- international (adj)
- surrounded (adj)

III. Speaking

IV. Homework: Your dream school

Giáo án 6: Unit 1: My new school

LESSON 6: SKILLS 2

I. Objectives:

By the end of the lesson, students can:

- use the lexical items related to the topic 'My new school'
- read emails and webpages
- listen to get information about school activities
- write a webpage for their school, using correct punctuation

II. Procedures: Các bước tiến hành

Hoạt động 1: Warm-up (3 to 5 minutes)

Chơi trò chơi 'Who is faster?'

Lớp chia thành 4 đội. HS gấp sách lại.

GV chiếu lên màn hình (hoặc dùng giấy A1, A2) đưa nội dung về PLC Sydney school (ở bài Skills 1) với 5 chỗ trống.

Mỗi đội lần lượt chuyển phần điền vào từ thiếu (1 bạn/1 từ).

Đội nào đúng và nhanh hơn, đội đó thắng cuộc.

PLC SYDNEY

(1) Ladies' College Sydney) is a school for girls in Sydney. It is a (2) school. Students study and live there. About 1,250 (3) from age four (kindergarten) to age eighteen (Year 12) go to PLC Sydney. PLC Sydney has students from all over (4) and overseas. Here, students study subjects like maths, (5) and English.

Lời dẫn:

– In the last lesson, we learnt about 3 schools. Now I will see if you remember about them or not by playing this interesting game.

– I have here the passage of PLC Sydney school with 5 missing words.

– The class is divided into 4 groups. 5 members of each group will come to the board to write down the missing words (1 person 1 word only).

– Who writes correctly and faster is the winner.

– You have 1 minute to play this game.

Hoạt động 2: Listening (5 minutes)

Listen and choose the correct answers.

GV giới thiệu về bạn Susie Brewer, học sinh trường PLC Sydney. Cho HS nghe lần đầu (chỉ nghe thôi). Cho HS nghe lần 2 và chọn đáp án đúng.

Lời dẫn:

– You have just showed me that you know about PLC really well. Now, I introduce you Susie Brewer, a student from that school.

– You will listen to her telling about herself twice. First time, just listen to the pronunciation only. Second time, listen and choose the correct option.

1. Susie _____ being at a girls' school.
A. likes B. doesn't like
2. Susie's favourite teacher is her _____ teacher.
A. maths B. science
3. Today, Susie _____.
A. is wearing her uniform
B. isn't wearing her uniform
4. Susie studies _____ for three hours a week.
A. English B. Vietnamese
5. Susie does her homework _____.
A. at break time B. in the evening

Key:

1. A 2. A 3. B
4. B 5. A

Audio script:

Hi. My name's Susie Brewer. I'm eleven years old. I'm now in grade 6 at PLC Sydney. I like it here, as I like to study in a girls' school. The teachers at my school are nice and very helpful and my favourite teacher is Mrs Susan McKeith. She teaches us maths. I have three hours to study Vietnamese

in the afternoon. Usually I do my homework at break time. We wear our uniform every day, but today we aren't, as we're going to have an outing to Taronga Zoo.

Hoạt động 3: Writing (30 minutes)

1 GV giải nghĩa các thuật ngữ và giải thích tầm quan trọng của các thuật ngữ này khi viết

Lời dẫn:

– Punctuation is very important in writing. You cannot have a good writing without correct punctuation. So what is punctuation? Let's learn some new terms.

New words:

1. Capital letters (n. phr.): start sentences, names, days... (like C in Capital)
2. Comma (n): I like apples, oranges, and bananas.
3. Full stop (n. phr.): Vinabrita is an international school.
4. Question mark (n. phr.): Do you like English?
5. Exclamation mark (n. phr.): How nice your school is!
6. Punctuation (n): dấu chấm câu

–> A good writing needs correct punctuation.

2 GV cho học sinh nghiên cứu Writing tip và hỏi học sinh cách sử dụng đúng chính tả.

Lời dẫn:

– Please study the writing tip right now and tell me when we use: "Capital letters"? – "Commas", "Full stops", "Question marks", and "Exclamation marks".



Writing tip – good punctuation

Does your writing have correct punctuation?

Capital letters for: starting sentences, names, days and months, the pronoun and places.

Pauses and endings: commas to separate long sentences and lists of things. Full stops, question marks, or exclamation marks are put at the end of sentences.

3 GV cho HS làm cá nhân bài tập 2 và 3 – Gọi HS lên bảng làm, các bạn bên dưới cùng chữa.

2 Can you correct the punctuation in these sentences?

1. school starts on the 5th september
2. does he live in ha noi
3. im excited about the first day of school
4. are you doing your homework
5. were having an english lesson in class

3 Can you correct the passage? Write the correct version.

hi im phong and im from ho chi minh city i wear my uniform to school every day my favourite teacher is mr trung he teaches me science

1. School starts on the 5th September.
 2. Does he live in Ha Noi?
 3. I'm excited about the first day of school.
 4. Are you doing your homework?
 5. We're having an English lesson in class.

GV yêu cầu HS sửa lại đoạn văn cho đúng và viết lại vào vở.

Key:

Hi. I'm Phong and I'm from Ho Chi Minh City. I wear my uniform to school every day. My favourite teacher is Mr Trung. He teaches me Science.

4 GV cho HS bắt đầu viết webpage theo nhóm 6.

– GV giới thiệu website của trường mình (nếu có) cho HS tham khảo.

– Nếu trường không có website, GV có thể sử dụng bài hát sau để gợi mở cho HS (https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=BjDIGl3yn_g)



– HS sử dụng các câu hỏi tham khảo để viết về trang web của trường. Sau đó thảo luận để đưa kết nối thành một đoạn văn hoàn chỉnh về trường trong vòng 80 từ. HS có thể tham khảo bài viết về 3 trường ở Skills 1.

– Các nhóm viết bài vào giấy A2 và treo sản phẩm của nhóm lên bảng hoặc lên tường cho các nhóm khác tham khảo.

Lời dẫn:

– *Everyone in our class I am sure must be very proud of being a member of this school. So now, let's prove that by creating a webpage for your school in about 80 words. You work in groups of 6. You can refer back to the 3 passages that you learnt in Skills 1.*

– *Also here, I have the webpage of our school for your references. You can use suggested questions on page 24 as well.*

– *And remember that a very important thing is to use good "punctuation". Now let's begin your work, the whole class.*

-
- What is the name of the school?
 - Where is the school?
 - How many students does the school have?
 - What do students do at school?
 - What is great/interesting/fun about your school?
 - What is your school day like?
 - What do you do in the morning?
 - What do you wear?
 - What subject do you like?
 - What do you do at break/lunch time?
 - What activities do you do?
 - What do you do after school?

Homework (2 minutes)

– Rewrite the webpage for your school in the notebook.

Trình bày bảng

Monday, May 25th, 2015

Unit 1 – My new school

Lesson 6 – Skills 2

I. Who is faster?

II. Listening

III. Writing

1. New words:

- Capital letters (n. phr.)
- Comma (n)
- Full stop (n.phr.)
- Question mark (n. phr.)
- Exclamation mark (n. phr.)
- Punctuation (n)

2. Write a webpage for your school.

IV. Homework

Giáo án 7: Unit 1: My new school

LESSON 7: LOOKING BACK - PROJECT

I. Objectives:

By the end of the lesson, students can:

- use the lexical items related to the topic 'My new school'
- pronounce correctly the sounds /əʊ/ and /ʌ/ in isolation and in context
- use the combinations: *to study, to have, to do, to play* + Noun
- use the present simple and the present continuous
- ask appropriate questions when making new friends at a new school
- read for specific information about schools, and read emails and webpages
- talk about school activities, subjects, and what Ss do at school
- listen to get information about school activities.
- write a webpage for their school, using correct punctuation

II. Procedures: Các bước tiến hành

Đây là bài tổng hợp lại toàn bộ các từ vựng, ngữ pháp, kiến thức mà HS đã được học trong 6 lessons trước đó. Vì vậy GV khuyến khích HS làm việc cá nhân để tự đánh giá xem mình đã lĩnh hội được toàn bộ kiến thức đã học hay chưa. Từ đó, cải thiện những gì HS còn chưa nắm vững.

GV động viên HS không mở lại sách hoặc vở khi làm các bài tập trong tiết học này.

Do vậy toàn bộ phần Looking back, HS sẽ làm việc cá nhân trên lớp. Nếu gặp khó khăn, HS có thể hỏi bạn bên cạnh hoặc thầy, cô giáo.

Hoạt động 1: Looking back (15 to 20 minutes)

Lời dẫn:

– *We have nearly reached our destination guys, as this is our last lesson of this unit. So I would like you to work individually almost all the time to do all the exercises in Looking back part.*

– *If you have any difficulties, don't hesitate to ask your partner to help you. However, before doing*

that, I would really want you to work your brain the hardest and try not to refer back to the 6 previous lessons. Is that OK?

– *Now, time is yours. Let's finish all the exercises individually.*

1 Write words that match the pictures.

		
1. _____	2. _____	3. _____
		
4. _____	5. _____	6. _____

2 Match the words in A with the ones in B.

A	B
	
1. study	a. the piano
2. do	b. Vietnamese
3. play	c. exercise
4. have	d. breakfast

3 Listen. Then write down the words you hear in the correct places.

play _____ _____	do _____ _____
study _____ _____	have _____ _____

Grammar

4 Complete the sentences with the present simple.

1. He _____ (come) from Da Nang.
2. Do you study English? No, I _____ (do not).
3. She _____ (walk) to school with her friends.
4. I _____ (do) my homework after school.
5. Mr Vo _____ (teach) physics at my school.
6. The team _____ (play) football on Saturdays.



5 Complete the sentences with the present continuous.

1. They _____ (do) judo in the gym.
2. My friends _____ (ride) to school with me.
3. _____ he _____ (study) vocabulary?
4. Mr Lee _____ (have) lunch with his students.
5. I _____ (walk) to class with my friends.
6. Ms Huong _____ (teach) the class maths.

6 Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

Hoang (1. live) _____ in a small house in the centre of the village. His house (2. be) _____ near his new school. Every day, he (3. have) _____ breakfast at 6 o'clock. Now, he (4. walk) _____ to school with his friends. They (5. go) _____ to school together every day. Hoang and his friends (6. study) _____ in grade 6 at An Son Lower Secondary School. This week they (7. work) _____ on a project about their neighbourhood. Hoang (8. love) _____ his new school.

Communication

7 Match the questions with the correct answers.

- a. Yes, she does.
- b. How many classes are there in your school?
- c. I do my homework and watch TV.
- d. How is your first week at school?
- e. Does Mai live near her school?
- f. Oh, wonderful.
- g. Sixteen.
- h. What do you do in the evening?

8 Now role-play the questions and answers with a partner.

Finished! Now you can ...	✓	✓✓	✓✓✓
• ask and answer questions about school			
• talk about things that are fixed or often happen			
• talk about things that are happening now			

Vocabulary

1 Tell Ss to write the words in their notebooks. Then T corrects the mistakes. Let them repeat the words. Check their pronunciation.

Key:

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------|
| 1. dictionary | 2. uniform |
| 3. pencil sharpener | 4. notebook |
| 5. compass | 6. calculator |

2 Have Ss write their answers in their notebooks. T checks their answers.

Key:

1. b 2. c 3. a 4. d

3 Play the recording twice. Let Ss write the words in the correct places. T gives correction.

Key:

- * play: sport, badminton, music
- * do: morning exercise, homework
- * study: new words, geography
- * have: English lessons, a new book

Audio script:

Play music, do homework, study new words, have a new book, do morning exercise, play badminton, have English lessons, study geography, play sports.

4, 5, 6 For these exercises, ask Ss to do them individually first. Then they can check their answers with a partner before discussing the answers as a class. However, tell Ss to keep a record of their original answers so they can use that information in their *Now you can...* statements.

Key:

4

- | | | |
|----------|------------|----------|
| 1. comes | 2. don't | 3. walks |
| 4. do | 5. teaches | 6. play |

5

- | | | |
|--------------|---------------|--------------------|
| 1. are doing | 2. are riding | 3. Is ... studying |
| 4. is having | 5. am walking | 6. is teaching |

6

- | | | |
|----------------|----------|----------|
| 1. lives | 2. is | 3. has |
| 4. is walking | 5. go | 6. study |
| 7. are working | 8. loves | |

Communication

7 Ss read the questions and answers once or twice (they can read aloud), then match them. If there is time, have them write all the sentences in their notebooks.

Key:

b-g d-f e-a h-c

8 Ss work in pairs and role-play the questions and answers.

Finished!

Finally ask Ss to complete the self-assessment. Identify any difficulties and weak areas and provide further practice.

Hoạt động 2: Project (20 to 25 minutes)

Phần Project này GV đã giao cho các nhóm làm việc từ bài Skills 1, vì vậy tiết này, các nhóm sẽ trình bày về sản phẩm của nhóm mình. Các bạn còn lại lắng nghe, cho nhận xét ưu, khuyết điểm của nhóm bạn. GV sẽ là người chốt cuối cùng về các sản phẩm đó. (Dành lời khen cho các nhóm có số lượng người trình bày nhiều, có nhiều tài liệu, tranh ảnh, video clips minh họa cho sản phẩm của nhóm mình)

Lời dẫn:

– 2 sessions before, I gave you the assignment of presenting your “Dream school”. You must have done it carefully within your group members for sure. Now, it is your showing time, please express your ideas of how a dream school would be like. Please share us your dream!

Homework (2 minutes)

– GV có thể giao thêm bài tập cho HS trong sách bài tập.

Trình bày bảng

Monday, May 25th, 2015

Unit 1 – My new school

Lesson 7 – Looking back – Project

I. Looking back

– Vocabulary

– Grammar

II. Project: Your dream school

III. Homework

Giáo án 1: Unit 2: My home

LESSON 1: GETTING STARTED

A look inside

Thời gian: 45 phút

I. Objectives:

By the end of the lesson, students can:

- use the lexical items related to the topic 'My home'
- use prepositions of place to describe the positions of furniture in the house

II. Procedures: Các bước tiến hành

Hoạt động 1: Warm-up (5 minutes)

Để dẫn dắt học sinh vào nội dung bài học, giáo viên có thể lựa chọn các phương án sau để cho học sinh hoạt động:

Phương án 1: Chơi trò chơi 'Slap the board'

Lời dẫn:

– Hey, guys. Would you like to play a game before we begin the lesson today?

– Well, first of all, I'm going to divide you into 2 teams, Blue and Green.

– 6 members from each team will come here and stand in two lines in front of the board.

– Be quiet and listen to my questions carefully. Slap the correct answers as quickly as possible.

– Who is quicker and get more correct answers will be the winner.

– Are you ready? Let's start now!

1. What is there behind you?
2. Where do you live?
3. Are there many rooms in your apartment?
4. Do you live with your grandparents?
5. Who do you live with?
6. Where is your kitchen?

Next to the living room.

With my parents and my younger brother.

No, I don't.

Yes, there are.

My bookshelf.

In an apartment.

Phương án 2: Chơi trò chơi 'Crossword puzzle'

Lời dẫn:

– Hey, guys. Would you like to join a game before we begin the lesson today?

– Well, first of all, I'm going to divide you into 2 teams, Blue and Green.

– Each time, a member of each team has to answer a question to find out a word.

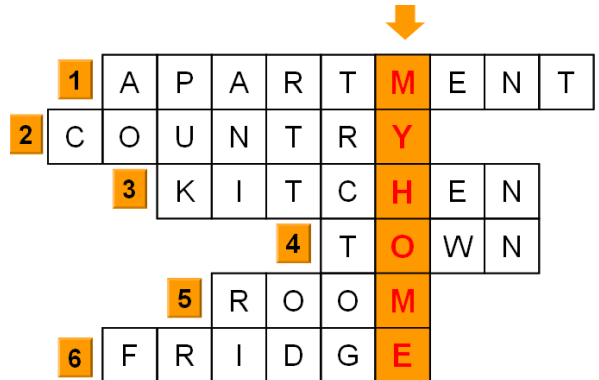
– One correct answer gives you one point.

– Are you ready? Now "Rock Paper Scissors" to decide who will go first.

(HS mỗi đội lần lượt đoán từ, GV ghi số điểm 2 đội đạt được lên bảng)

GV chỉ cho HS ô chữ hàng dọc. HS đọc to ô chữ có chứa chủ đề bài học: MY HOME)

CROSSWORD PUZZLE



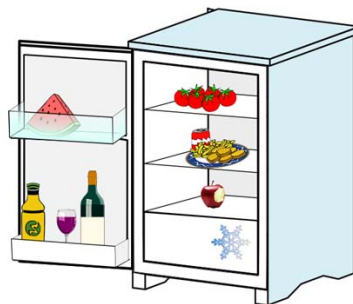
Where does Mi live?

(She lives) in an **APARTMENT**.



They have a small house in the C_____.

COUNTRY

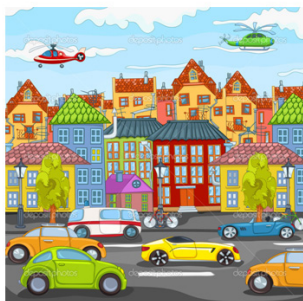


The tomatoes are in the _____.

FRIDGE



Which room is it?
It is a **KITCHEN**.



What word is it? N O T W

TOWN



What is it?

It's a _____.
ROOM

Hoạt động 2: Elicit the dialogue (13 minutes)

Mi: Wow. That room looks so big, Nick. I can see there's a TV behind you.

Nick: Yes. I'm in the living room. Can you see my dog Luke? He's sitting on the sofa.

Mi: Yes, I can. He looks happy.

Nick: Ha ha, he is. Your room looks nice too. Where do you live, Mi?

Mi: I live in a town house. It's near the city centre and it's very noisy. How about you? Where do you live?

Nick: I live in a country house. Who do you live with?

Mi: I live with my father, mother and younger brother. We are moving to an apartment next month.

Nick: Are you?

Mi: Yes, we are. My aunt lives near there and I can play with my cousin, Vy.

Nick: Are there many rooms in your new apartment?

Mi: Yes, there are. There's a living room, three bedrooms, a kitchen and two bathrooms. The kitchen is next to the living room.

(Sound of shouting)

Nick: Oh, that's my mum. I'd better go. It's dinner time. Bye, see you soon.

Lời dẫn:

– Now, let's have a look at this picture. You know, Mi and Nick are pen friends.

– What are they doing now? (They are talking on Skype/ They are chatting via webcam/ etc.)



Bài tập 1b

b Read the conversation again. Complete the sentences.

1. There is a _____ and a _____ in Nick's living room.
2. Now, Mi lives in a _____.
3. Luke likes _____.
4. Mi thinks living near the city centre is _____.
5. Mi's new home has _____ bedrooms.

Lời dẫn:

– Mi and Nick also talk about other things. Now, who can remember and summarize their conversation?

– Let's do Exercise 1b, page 17. Each of you has to read the conversation again, then complete the sentences.

HS làm cá nhân sau đó sẽ thảo luận đáp án với bạn bên cạnh.

GV gọi từng HS đọc to và chốt lại đáp án đúng của từng câu:

Key:

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------|
| 1. TV – sofa | 2. town house |
| 3. sitting on the sofa | 4. noisy |
| 5. three | |

Hoạt động 3: Revise 'Prepositions of place' (5 minutes)

– What might they talk about? (Ss' answers)

– Now, let's listen and find out what their topic is, OK?

(GV bật đĩa cho HS nghe hội thoại 2 lần sau đó mời 2 HS thực hành lại hội thoại.)

Bài tập 1a

a Which family members does Mi talk about?

grandparents	
dad	✓
mum	
brother	
uncle	
aunt	
cousin	

Lời dẫn:

– You have already listened to the dialogue. Now I would like to check how much you understand the talk between Mi and Nick.

– Who can read the request of Exercise 1a, page 17?

– Let's do the exercise individually first, then compare in pairs.

HS làm cá nhân sau đó sẽ thảo luận đáp án với bạn bên cạnh.

– Well, can you find the answer now? Who can tell me which family members Mi talks about?

– Who's got a different answer? OK. I agree with you: Mi talks about her dad, her mum, her brother, her aunt and her cousin.

Prepositions of place

2 Match the prepositions with the pictures.

in on behind
in front of under
between next to



A. _____



B. _____



C. _____



D. _____



E. _____



F. _____



G. _____

Phương án 1: Chơi trò chơi 'Kim's game'

Luật chơi:

- GV chia lớp thành các nhóm nhỏ, mỗi nhóm khoảng 4 HS.
- GV cho HS gấp SGK lại và nhìn vào 7 hình vẽ (vị trí của mèo) trong một phút.
- GV cất các hình vẽ. HS mỗi nhóm nhớ lại vị trí của mèo theo đúng thứ tự các hình vẽ mà GV vừa đưa ra và viết nhanh các giới từ tương ứng vào tờ giấy khổ A4.
- GV thu 3 hoặc 4 bài nhanh nhất để chọn ra nhóm thắng cuộc: là nhóm vừa hoàn thành bài nhanh nhất, vừa có tất cả các đáp án chính xác tuyệt đối. GV có thể cho điểm khuyến khích động viên các thành viên trong nhóm.

Lời dẫn:

- Well, can you close your books now?
- I have a question for you: What does Mi tell Nick about her kitchen? (Her kitchen is next to the living room.)
- Right! Good memory. And the whole class, let's pay attention to the preposition "next to". It is a preposition of place.
- By the way, can you remember other prepositions of place?
- Let's check by joining this game: "Kim's Game".
- Work in groups of 4. I'm going to give you 7 pictures. Look at these pictures for only 1 minute and remember all the positions of the cat. Then

write all the prepositions in the correct order (of the 7 pictures). Which group finishes first and has all the correct answers will be the winner and get mark 10 from me.

– Do you want to try? Let's start now.

GV chốt lại đáp án đúng của bài:

- A. on
- B. next to
- C. behind
- D. in
- E. in front of
- F. between
- G. under

Phương án 2: Chơi trò chơi 'Pelmanism'

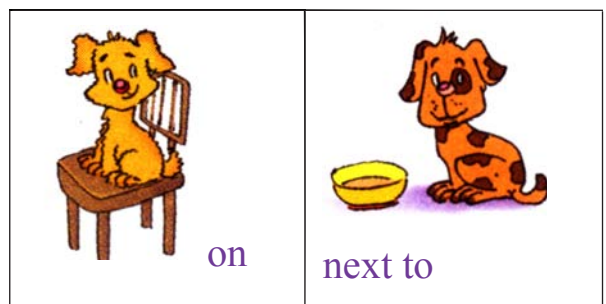
Luật chơi:

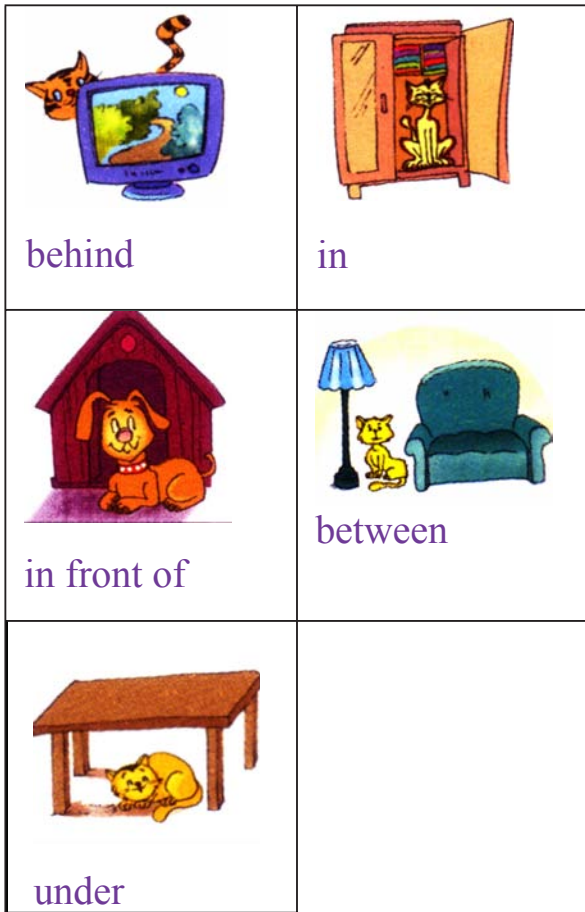
- Cả lớp chia thành 2 đội Blue và Green.
- GV có thể dùng phần mềm tạo sẵn trong đĩa nếu dùng máy tính (có sẵn trong đĩa CD kèm theo sách) hoặc có thể chơi trên bảng bằng việc cắt 2 bộ cards. Bộ 1 là hình vẽ các vị trí của mèo (SGK), bộ 2 là các giới từ chỉ vị trí tương ứng.
- 2 thành viên của 2 đội lên kết hợp đúng đôi tranh và từ.
- Đội nào nối đúng và nhanh hơn sẽ thắng cuộc.

Lời dẫn:

- Well, can you close your books now?
- I have a question for you: What does Mi tell Nick about her kitchen? (Her kitchen is next to the living room.)
- Right! Good memory. And the whole class, let's pay attention to the preposition "next to". It is a preposition of place.
- By the way, can you remember other prepositions of place?
- Let's check by joining this game: 'Pelmanism'
- I have 2 sets of cards, the first one is different positions of a cat, and the other is different prepositions of place. Let's match as fast as possible the correct pairs. Are you ready?

GV chốt lại đáp án đúng của bài:





Phương án 3: Matching

(áp dụng với HS chưa nắm vững kiến thức)

Lời dẫn:

– Now I have a question for you: What does Mi tell Nick about her kitchen? (Her kitchen is next to the living room.)

– Right! Good memory. And the whole class, let's pay attention to the preposition "next to". It is a preposition of place.

– When do we use prepositions of place? (When we talk about position of someone or something)

– By the way, can you remember other prepositions of place? Repeat these prepositions after me.

GV cho HS đọc đồng thanh các giới từ cho sẵn trong SGK và hỏi lại nghĩa từng giới từ nếu thấy HS chưa nắm vững phần kiến thức này.

– And now match the prepositions with the correct pictures.

GV chốt lại đáp án đúng của bài:

A. on

B. next to

C. behind

D. in

E. in front of

F. between

G. under

Hoạt động 4: Write-it-up (5 minutes)

(GV có thể giao HS làm bài tập này tại nhà.)

Write a sentence to describe each picture in Exercise 2.

Example:

A. The dog is on the chair.

Lời dẫn:

– Yes, I can see that you remember all the prepositions of place quite well.

– Now write a sentence to describe each picture in Exercise 2.

HS làm bài tập cá nhân. GV gọi một số HS viết đáp án lên bảng. GV kiểm tra vở một số HS, đặc biệt là những em HS tiếp thu chậm hơn các bạn cùng lớp.

GV chốt lại đáp án đúng của bài:

A. The dog is on the chair.

B. The dog is next to the bowl.

C. The cat is behind the TV.

D. The cat is in the wardrobe.

E. The dog is in front of the kennel.

F. The cat is between the lamp and the sofa.

G. The cat is under the table.

Hoạt động 5: Look at the picture and write T/F (5 minutes)

HS làm bài tập cá nhân. GV gọi một số HS đưa câu trả lời là đúng hay sai. Nếu câu đã cho sai, HS đưa phương án sửa lại cho đúng nội dung bức tranh.

Lời dẫn:

– Well, I have another picture to show you now.

– Look at the room in the picture. It is a very messy room, isn't it?

– There are some descriptions of the room but some are true (T) and some are false (F). Remember to correct the false ones.

4 Look at the picture and write true (T) or false (F) for each sentence. Correct the false ones.



GV chốt lại đáp án đúng của bài:

1. F → The dog is between the bookshelf and the bed.
2. T
3. F → The clock is between the pictures.
4. F → The cat is in front of the computer.
5. F → The cap is next to the pillow.
6. T

Hoạt động 6: Look at the picture and answer the questions (8 minutes)

5 Look at the picture again. Answer the questions.

1. Where are the books?
2. Where are the clothes?
3. Is the pillow on the bed?
4. Are the notebooks under the bed?
5. Where is the mouse?
6. Is the chair next to the bed?

Phương án 1: Picture Cue Drill

(áp dụng với HS đại trà)

- HS xem lại tranh và tự trả lời câu hỏi liên quan tới nội dung bức tranh.
- HS trao đổi và so sánh với đáp án của bạn ngồi bên cạnh.
- GV gọi vài HS trả lời câu hỏi và chốt lại đáp án đúng của bài.

Lời dẫn:

- You know, the room is very untidy and it's so difficult to find things here.
- Look at the picture again. Can you answer the questions to find some things in the room?
- Find the answers yourselves, then compare in pairs.
- ... Let's check together!

Key:

1. They are on the desk/ bookshelf.
2. They are on the floor.
3. Yes, it is.
4. No, they aren't. They're on the bed.
5. It's behind the bookshelf.
6. No, it isn't. It's next to the table.

Phương án 2: Memorising Game

(áp dụng với HS khá, giỏi)

Luật chơi:

- Cả lớp chia thành 2 đội Blue và Green.
- HS gấp sách, không nhìn tranh và lắng nghe câu hỏi của GV. GV có thể sử dụng các câu hỏi trong SGK và có thể thêm một số câu hỏi khác, tùy trình độ HS.
- GV gọi HS ở mỗi nhóm trả lời. Nhóm có nhiều câu trả lời đúng hơn sẽ là người thắng cuộc.
- GV cho HS xem lại tranh và chốt lại câu trả lời đúng.

Lời dẫn:

- You know, the room is very untidy and it's so difficult to find things here.
- I would like to ask you some questions to check whether you can remember the positions of some furniture in the room or not.

– Blue and Green, please listen to my questions and try to answer as quickly as possible. Remember, who's got more correct answers will be the winner. Are you ready? Let's listen!

Key:

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 1. They are on the desk/ bookshelf. | 2. They are on the floor. |
| 3. Yes, it is. | 4. No, they aren't. They're on the bed. |
| 5. It's behind the bookshelf. | 6. No, it isn't. It's next to the table. |

Kết bài (2 minutes)

Now can you remember what you have learnt today?

Minh, please!

Yes, you are right, through the lesson you now know how to use prepositions of place and you can also describe the positions of some furniture in the room.

I think that's enough for today and here's your homework.

Homework (2 minutes)

1. Do Exercise B5 (page 11) – Workbook.
2. Prepare for the next lesson.

Trình bày bảng

Unit 2 – My home

Lesson 1 – Getting started – A look inside

I. Slap the board

II. Listen and read

1. Tick the correct answers
2. Complete the sentences
3. Match the prepositions with the pictures
4. Write-it-up
5. Write T/F
6. Answer the questions

III. Homework

Giáo án 2: Unit 2: My home

LESSON 2: A CLOSER LOOK 1

I. Objectives:

By the end of the lesson, students can:

- use the lexical items related to the topic 'My home'
- pronounce correctly the ending sounds /s/, /z/ and /iz/ in isolation and in context

II. Procedures: Các bước tiến hành

Hoạt động 1: Warm-up (5 minutes)

Phương án 1: Chơi trò chơi 'Lucky number'

Luật chơi:

- GV cho HS xem một video clip. HS cố gắng nhớ những thông tin trong đoạn video clip đó.
- GV chia HS thành hai đội. Các đội lần lượt chọn câu hỏi cho đội mình. Mỗi câu trả lời đúng được 1 điểm và nếu gặp 'Lucky Number' sẽ được 1 điểm mà không cần trả lời câu hỏi. Đội ghi nhiều điểm hơn sẽ là đội thắng cuộc.

Lời dẫn:

- How are you today, class?
- Good! I hope everyone is OK and I would like you to be more excited with this game: 'Lucky Number'.
- First of all, all of you are divided into two teams: BOYS and GIRLS.
- You're going to watch a video clip. Try to remember as much information from the clip as possible.



<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=sE2GEaQJrwc>

– I have some questions for you. Choose the number of the questions you want to choose. One correct answer gives you one point and if you can get a lucky number, you can also get one point without having to answer any questions.

1. Lucky Number
2. What does she do in her bedroom? (She sleeps and dreams.)
3. List at least 3 things in her kitchen. (Forks, knives, plates, glasses.)
4. Where does she wash her hands? (In the/ her bathroom)
5. Lucky Number
6. Does she watch TV in her bedroom? (No, she doesn't.)

Phương án 2: Chơi trò chơi 'Jumbled words'

Luật chơi:

- GV cho HS sắp xếp các chữ cái xáo trộn làm thành những từ đúng.
- GV cho nghĩa từ mới đối với HS nếu cần thiết.

Lời dẫn:

- How are you today, class?
- Good! I hope everyone is OK and I'm sure you'll be much happier if you can get mark 10 from me now.
- Let's find out the correct words from these jumbled words. Remember, the first letter is already given to you.
- I'll call 5 quickest students and check your answers. Who's got all the correct answers will get mark 10. Are you ready?

- | | | |
|---------------------|------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. <u>b</u> roaomth | 2. <u>l</u> vniig romo | 3. <u>h</u> lal |
| 4. <u>k</u> cehitn | 5. <u>a</u> icct | 6. <u>b</u> deorom |

– Good job! I see that many of you have the correct answers. Now check together, please!

- | | | |
|-------------|----------------|------------|
| 1. bathroom | 2. living room | 3. hall |
| 4. kitchen | 5. attic | 6. bedroom |

Hoạt động 2: Name the rooms of the house – Bài tập 1, trang 18, SGK (5 minutes)

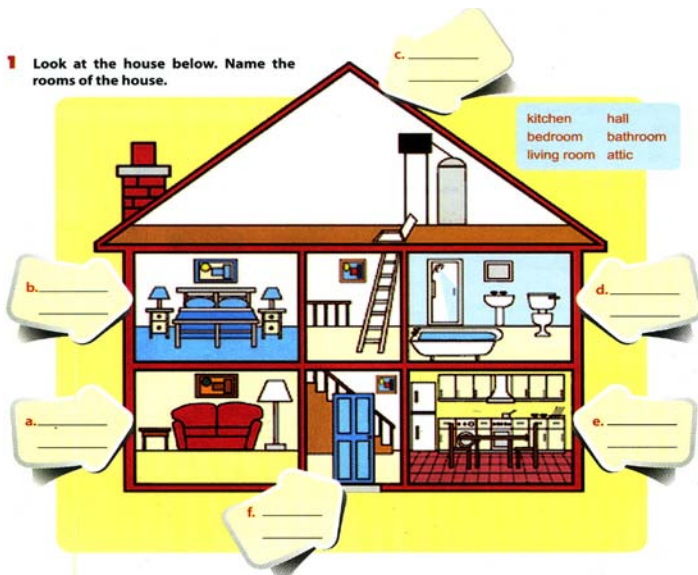
HS làm bài cá nhân, rồi sau đó so sánh đáp án với bạn ngồi cạnh.

GV gọi vài HS trả lời và chốt lại đáp án đúng.

GV giải thích nghĩa từ mới cho HS.

Lời dẫn:

– Living room, kitchen, bedroom, bathroom, etc. are different rooms of a house. Now look at the house and give the correct name of each room:



Key:

- a. living room b. bedroom c. attic
- d. bathroom e. kitchen f. hall

New words:

c. attic /'ætɪk/ (n) = a space/ room just below the roof of a house, often used for storing things

f. hall /'hɔ:l/ (n) = a space/ passage inside the entrance or front door of a building/ house

Hoạt động 3: Name the things in each room (15 minutes)

a. Teach new words

Lời dẫn:

In Exercise 1, you have already listed 6 rooms of the house. So what furniture is put in each room? I'll give you some new words to talk about rooms in a house.

New words:

1. chest of drawers (n): (visual)
2. air-conditioner (n) : (visual)
3. sink (n): (visual)
4. cooker (n) : (visual)
5. microwave (n) : (visual)
6. ceiling fan (n) : (visual)

Checking technique:

Phương án 1: Rub out and remember

Phương án 2: What and Where

Phương án 3: Slap the board

b. Bài tập 2, trang 18, SGK: Network

2 Name the things in each room in 1. Use the word list below. (You may use a word more than once.)

living room	lamp	wardrobe
bedroom	toilet	sink
kitchen	bed	sofa
bathroom	picture	television
hall	bath	table
attic	cupboard	dishwasher
	chest of drawers	desk
	fridge	cooker
	poster	light
	chair	microwave
	air-conditioner	ceiling fan

Lời dẫn:

Work in groups of four to find the answers. Which groups finish first and get all the correct answers will be the winner and get mark 10 from me. Try your best! I'll call 5 quickest groups.

Key:

- living room: lamp, sofa, picture, table
- bedroom: bed, lamp, picture, chest of drawers
- kitchen: fridge, cupboard, cooker, table, dishwasher, chair
- bathroom: bath, sink, toilet
- hall: picture

b. Bài tập 3, trang 18, SGK

3 Listen and repeat the words. Can you add any more words to the list?

(GV khuyến khích HS bổ sung thêm vốn từ vựng và nếu cần thiết, GV cho HS hoàn thành tiếp bài tập này tại nhà.)

c. Bài tập 4, trang 18, SGK

4 Think of a room. In pairs, ask and answer questions to guess the room.

Example:

- A: What's in the room?
- B: A sofa and a television.
- A: Is it the living room?
- B: Yes.

Hoạt động 4: Pronunciation of the ending sounds /s/, /z/ and /ɪz/ (18 minutes)

• GV cho HS xem clip về quy tắc phát âm đuôi "s" của DT số nhiều và ĐT ngôi thứ 3 số ít ở thời Hiện tại đơn, sau đó cho HS luyện tập các bài tập 5, 6, 7, 8 – trang 18, 19 – SGK.

/z/

Final *-s* is pronounced */z/* after voiced sounds (*/b/, /d/, /g/, /n/, /m/, /l/,* etc.) and any vowel sounds

E.g. beds, dogs, cans, rooms, videos, cookers, bees

/s/

Final *-s* is pronounced */s/* after voiceless sounds (*/t/, /p/, /k/, /f/, /θ/*)

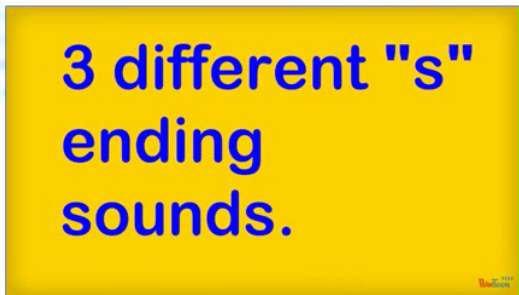
E.g. cats, lamps, books, months

/ɪz/

Final *-es* is pronounced */ɪz/* after */s/, /z/, /ʃ/, /tʃ/, /dʒ/*

E.g. buses, houses, toothbrushes, watches, pages

• Đường link: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=S5ObG18FT_k



5 Listen and repeat the words.

lamps	posters	sinks	fridges
tables	wardrobes	toilets	beds

6 Listen again and put the words in the correct column.

<i>/z/</i>	<i>/s/</i>	<i>/ɪz/</i>

Key:

<i>/z/</i> posters, tables, wardrobes, beds	<i>/s/</i> lamps, sinks, toilets	<i>/ɪz/</i> fridges
--	--	------------------------

7 Read the conversation below. Underline the final *s/es* in the words and write */z/, /s/* or */ɪz/*.

- Mi:** Mum, are you home?
- Mum:** Yes, honey. I'm in the kitchen. I've bought these new dishes and chopsticks.
- Mi:** They're beautiful, Mum. Where did you buy them?
- Mum:** In the department store near our house. There are a lot of interesting things for the home there.
- Mi:** We need some pictures for the living room, Mum. Do they have pictures in the store?
- Mum:** No, they don't. But there are some ceiling lights. We are buying two for the new apartment this week.
- Mi:** We also need two new vases, Mum.
- Mum:** That's true. Let's go to the store this weekend.

Key:

- /z/*: things, pictures
- /s/*: lights, chopsticks
- /ɪz/*: dishes, vases

Homework (2 minutes)

1. Do Exercise A1, 2 & B2, 3 (p. 10, 11) – Workbook.
2. Prepare for the next lesson.

Trình bày bảng

Unit 2 – My home

Lesson 2 – A closer look 1

I. Lucky Numbers

II. Vocabulary

1. Name the rooms of the house

- hall (n)

- attic (n)

2. Name the things in each room

- chest of drawers (n)
- air-conditioner (n)
- sink (n)
- cooker (n)
- microwave (n)
- ceiling fan (n)

III. Pronunciation: /s/, /z/ and /ɪz/

IV. Homework

Giáo án 3: Unit 2: My home

LESSON 3: A CLOSER LOOK 2

I. Objectives:

By the end of the lesson, students can use *There is/ There isn't – There are/ There aren't* to describe the positions of some furniture in their room.

II. Procedures: Các bước tiến hành

Hoạt động 1: Warm-up (5 – 7 minutes)

Chơi trò chơi 'Spot the difference'

Spot the Difference: There is / are



Lời dẫn:

– Do you think that you have good and quick eyes?

– We have two teams as usual, Blue and Green and let's try this game: "Spot the difference".

– I'm going to give you two pictures. Work in pairs. In only two minutes, find as many differences between the two pictures as possible, using the structure 'There is/ isn't' or 'There are/ aren't'.

– After two minutes, each member of each team in turn speaks out the differences you can find out. The team with more correct answers will be the winner.

Suggested answers:

– In Picture A, there isn't a clock on the wall.

– In Picture B, there aren't any apples on the table.

etc.

Hoạt động 2: Structures with "There is/ isn't" and "There are/ aren't" (7 – 10 minutes)

Lời dẫn:

– Brilliant! I'm so satisfied that all of you have very good answers in a very short time. Now spend more time talking about the structures we are using.

– When do we use the structure with 'There is/ isn't' and "There are/ aren't"? (We use them to say that something exists.)

– How do we use them? (We use "There is" with singular nouns and "There are" with plural nouns.)

(GV cho HS đọc phần Grammar Box trang 19 và tóm tắt trên bảng): Now please, read the Grammar Box on page 19.

	Singular	Plural
(+)	There <u>is</u>	There <u>are</u>
(-)	There <u>isn't</u>	There <u>aren't</u>
(?)	<u>Is</u> there ...?	<u>Are</u> there ...?

1 Write is or are.

- There _____ a sofa in the living room.
- There _____ two cats in the kitchen.
- There _____ posters on the wall.
- There _____ a ceiling fan in the bedroom.
- There _____ dishes on the floor.

Key:

- is
- are
- are
- is
- are

Exercise 2 – p. 19 – Student's Book

GV cho HS làm việc cá nhân.

2 Make the sentences in 1 negative.

Example:

1. There isn't a sofa in the living room.

Key:

1. isn't 2. aren't 3. aren't

4. isn't 5. aren't

Exercise 3 – p. 19 – Student's Book

GV cho HS làm việc theo cặp: 1 HS nói câu khẳng định, 1 HS nói câu phủ định. Yêu cầu học sinh viết lại khi về nhà.

Now work in pairs please: S1 says the affirmative sentence and S2 says the negative sentence. At home you have to write again these sentences.

3 Write positive and negative sentences.

Example: pictures/the living room

There are pictures in the living room.

There aren't pictures in the living room.

1. a TV/the table
2. a brown dog/the kitchen
3. a boy/the cupboard
4. a bath/the bathroom
5. lamps/the bedroom

Key:

1. There is/ isn't a TV next to/ on the table.
2. There is/ isn't a brown dog in the kitchen.
3. There is/ isn't a boy in front of the cupboard.
4. There is/ isn't a bath in the bathroom.
5. There are/ aren't lamps in the bedroom.

Exercise 4 – p. 20 – Student's Book

GV cho HS làm việc cá nhân.

4 Write is/isn't/are/aren't in each blank to describe the kitchen in Mi's house.

This is our kitchen. There is a big fridge in the corner. The sink is next to the fridge. There (1) _____ a cupboard and a cooker. The kitchen is also our dining room, so there (2) _____ a table. There (3) _____ four people in my family so there (4) _____ four chairs. The kitchen is small, but it has a big window. There (5) _____ many lights in the kitchen but there is only one ceiling light. There (6) _____ a picture on the wall.

Key:

- | | | |
|--------|-----------|----------|
| 1. is | 2. is | 3. are |
| 4. are | 5. aren't | 6. isn't |

Exercise 5 – p. 20 – Student's Book

GV cho HS làm việc cá nhân.

5 Complete the questions.

Example: Are there two bathrooms in your house?

1. _____ a fridge in your kitchen?
2. _____ a TV in your bedroom?
3. _____ four chairs in your living room?
4. _____ a desk next to your bed?
5. _____ two sinks in your bathroom?

Key:

1. Is there a fridge in your kitchen?
2. Is there a TV in your bedroom?
3. Are there four chairs in your living room?
4. Is there a desk next to your bed?
5. Are there two sinks in your bathroom?

GV giới thiệu cách hỏi của bài 6, sau đó kết hợp bài tập 6 và 7 cho HS làm việc theo cặp.

(Vẽ 1 tranh minh họa. Có 2 hình. 1 hình nhà có 2 buồng tắm, 1 hình có 1 buồng tắm, hoặc hình minh họa tương tự). GV chỉ vào tranh và đặt câu hỏi theo BT 6. Gọi HS trả lời.

Lời dẫn:

– Please look at this picture and then answer my questions based on the picture.

– Are there two bathrooms in your house? Yes, there are. (Excellent!) Go on...

– Now look at Ex 6 and 7 and make a short conversation/dialogue with your partner.

Exercise 6 – p. 20 – Student's Book

GV cho HS làm việc theo cặp, đặt câu hỏi và phỏng vấn theo cặp.

6 In pairs, ask and answer the questions in 5. Report your partner's answers to the class.

A: Are there two bathrooms in your house?

B: Yes, there are./No, there aren't.

Exercise 7 – p. 20 – Student's Book

GV cho HS làm việc theo cặp, đặt câu hỏi và phỏng vấn theo cặp.

7 Work in pairs. Ask your partner about his/her room or the room he/she likes best in the house.

- Where's your room?
- What's your favourite room?
- Is there a fridge in your room?
- Are there two lamps in your room?

Homework (2 minutes)

1. Do Exercise B4 – p.11 – Workbook.
2. Prepare for the next lesson.

Trình bày bảng

Unit 2 – My home

Lesson 3 – A closer look 2

I. Spot the difference

II. Grammar

	Singular	Plural
(+)	There <u>is</u>	There <u>are</u>
(-)	There <u>isn't</u>	There <u>aren't</u>
(?)	<u>Is</u> there ...?	<u>Are</u> there ...?

III. Practice

IV. Homework

Giáo án 4: Unit 2: My home

LESSON 4: COMMUNICATION

I. Objectives:

By the end of the lesson, students can use:

- suitable vocabulary;
- structures with *There is/ are*;
- suitable prepositions of place;

to describe different types of houses.

II. Procedures: Các bước tiến hành

Hoạt động 1: Warm-up (5 minutes)

Phương án 1: Chơi trò chơi 'Board race' / 'Pass the chalk'

Lượt chơi:

- Cả lớp chia thành 2 đội Blue và Green.
- HS nhìn tranh cho sẵn, đặt câu bắt đầu bằng "There is/ are ..." và các giới từ chỉ vị trí thích hợp để miêu tả bức tranh.
- HS mỗi đội luân phiên chuyển phần cho nhau để viết các câu trả lời lên bảng, hoặc vào hai tấm poster mà GV đã chuẩn bị sẵn trước tiết học. Trong 2 phút, đội nào có nhiều câu trả lời đúng hơn sẽ là đội thắng cuộc.



Lời dẫn:

- Have you ever joined in a race?
- What do you have to do when joining a race? (Try to be the fastest)
- And today, you will have a chance to be the fastest with a game named "Board race".

– Look at the picture. Use 'There is/ are ...' and the suitable prepositions to make as many sentences as possible in order to describe the room.

– When I say "Start", one member from each team tries to move quickly to the board to write the sentence and then pass the chalk to another one in your team.

– In 2 minutes, the team with more correct descriptions will be the winner.

– Now are you ready? Start!

Phương án 2: Chơi trò chơi 'Simon says'

Lời dẫn:

GV giải thích cho HS trò chơi là khi có câu "Simon says" thì mới làm theo, không là bị loại.

– What about trying an exciting game before we begin our new lesson?

– Let's try 'Simon says' now. Please listen carefully!

Simon says: Put your hands on your desk. (làm theo)

Put your hands above the desk. (không làm theo)

Put your hands behind your back. (không làm theo)

Simon says: Put your books in your desk. (làm theo)

Simon says: Put your books under your desk. (làm theo)

Etc.

Hoạt động 2: Teach the new vocabulary

(5 minutes)

Lời dẫn:

– I think you're very good at using prepositions of place now. In our lesson today, we'll continue to use prepositions of place to describe houses.

– And first of all, I'll give you some new words.

New words:

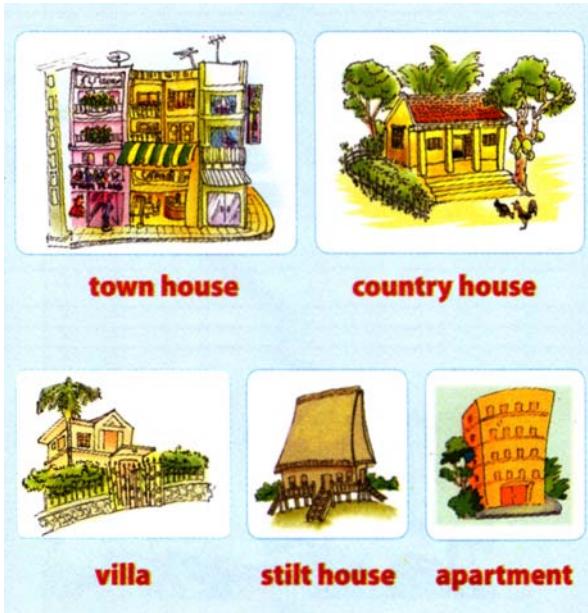
1. villa (n) : (visual)

2. stilt house (n) : (visual)

Checking techniques: Matching

Match the pictures with the suitable words:

stilt house – country house – apartment – villa – town house



GV gọi 1 HS đọc yêu cầu đề bài và cho HS hoàn thành bài tập cá nhân, sau đó HS có thể trao đổi đáp án theo cặp trước khi đọc đáp án trước lớp. (Work individually first and then with your partners share the key)

GV gọi một số HS đọc đáp án để chữa trước lớp.

Key:

- | | | |
|------------|--------|------------|
| 1. country | 2. are | 3. is |
| 4. are | 5. on | 6. next to |
| 7. on | 8. is | |

Exercise 2 – p. 21 – Student’s Book

GV gọi 1 HS đọc yêu cầu đề bài và kiểm tra lại xem HS đã hiểu đúng yêu cầu đề bài hay chưa, đồng thời GV làm mẫu vài câu hỏi thoại để HS nắm được cách làm.

Sau cùng, GV gọi 1 hoặc 2 cặp thực hành lại hội thoại trước lớp. GV gọi các HS khác bổ sung ý kiến và sửa lỗi nếu cần thiết.

Hoạt động 3: Practice (30 – 33 minutes)

Exercise 1 – p. 20 – Student’s Book

1 Mi tells Nick about her grandparents’ country house. Look at the pictures of her grandparents’ house and complete the sentences.



1. My grandparents live in a _____ house in Nam Dinh.
2. There _____ four rooms in the house and a big garden.
3. I like the living room. There _____ a big window in this room.
4. There _____ four chairs and a table in the middle of the room.
5. There are two family photos _____ the wall.
6. There is a small fridge _____ the cupboard.
7. A television is _____ the cupboard.
8. There _____ also a ceiling fan.

2. Student A looks at the pictures of Nick’s house on this page. Student B looks at the pictures of Mi’s house on page 25. Find the differences between the two houses.

Example:

A: Nick lives in a country house. Where does Mi live?

B: Mi lives in a town house.



Lời dẫn:

– Who is A, raise your hand, please. And what about B, where are you?

– What do A and B have to do?

– Now I’m A. Who volunteers to be B and practise the conversation with me?

...

– Thank you, Start your conversation now, A and B. Remember to note down the differences between the two houses.

Exercise 3 – p. 21 – Student’s Book

3 Draw a simple plan of your house. Tell your partner about your house.



Lời dẫn:

– As you know, Mi’s house is quite different from Nick’s house, because each house has different owners and different styles.

– Imagine you are a designer and you want to build your new house. Draw a simple plan of your house. After that, tell your partner about your house.

Exercise 4 – p. 21 – Student’s Book

4 Describe your friend’s house to the class.

Lời dẫn:

– Now it’s time to share your ideas. Show the plan of your partner’s house and describe it.

– Who wants to speak first?

– Well, Mai, please.

... Do you have the same ideas with your partner? What is the difference between your house and your partner’s house? What is the best thing you like in your partner’s house?

... What about the others? What suggestions can you give to your friends?

Homework (2 minutes)

1. Do Exercise B1 – p.10 and C1, 2 – p. 12 – Workbook.

2. Prepare for the next lesson.

Trình bày bảng

Unit 2 – My home

Lesson 3 – Communication

I. Board Race

II. Vocabulary

- villa (n)
- stilt house (n)

III. Practice

1. Complete the sentences
2. Find the differences between Nick’s and Mi’s house
3. Draw and then tell your partner about a simple plan of your house
4. Describe your friend’s house to the class

IV. Homework

Giáo án 5: Unit 2: My home

LESSON 5: SKILLS 1

I. Objectives:

By the end of the lesson, students can:

- understand the description of a room at the Crazy House Hotel in Da Lat
- describe one room (in their imagination) in that hotel

II. Procedures: Các bước tiến hành

Hoạt động 1: Warm-up (5 minutes)

Phương án 1: Chơi trò chơi 'Hidden word'

Luật chơi:

- GV chia lớp thành hai đội Blue và Green.
- Trên bảng hoặc trên màn hình là một ô chữ bí mật gồm 5 chữ cái. Muốn tìm ra ô chữ, thành viên hai đội lần lượt chọn ô câu hỏi bất kỳ để trả lời câu hỏi. Nếu trả lời đúng, chữ cái tương ứng với ô chữ đó sẽ được GV lật ra hoặc cho hiện trên màn hình.
- Đội nào tìm ra được ô chữ bí mật trước là đội thắng cuộc.

Lời dẫn:

– Today I have a secret word for you to discover. I hope intelligent students like you will quickly find out the correct word. Do you think so?

– We have two teams, Blue and Green as usual.

– There are five boxes numbered from 1 to 5. Each box is a question. Take turns to choose the number and answer the question. If the answer is correct, you'll get 1 letter from the hidden word.

– The team which finds the 'Hidden word' first will be the winner.

– Now play "rock paper scissors" to decide who'll go first. Start now!... Oh, (Blue/Green) will go first.

1	2	3	4	5
---	---	---	---	---

1: List 5 types of the house you know (city house, town house, villa, stilt house, apartment)

2: List 5 things in the bathroom (bath, shower, sink, basin, toilet, comb, hairdryer, towel (rack), toothbrush, toothpaste, razor, shampoo, shower gel, bin, shaving foam, etc.)

3: List 5 things in the kitchen (fridge, cupboard, cooker, table, dishwasher, chair, dishes, bowl, chopstick, spoon, etc.)

4: List 5 things in the bedroom (bed, lamp, picture, chest of drawers, wardrobe, pillow, shelf, cabinet, etc.)

5: List 10 things in the living room (lamp, sofa, picture, table, chair, armchair, light, TV, cushion, rug, coffee table, vase of flowers, etc.)

Key:

C	R	A	Z	Y
---	---	---	---	---

– Who can explain that word in English if possible (and in Vietnamese if you like)? (very strange)

Of course you are not going to talk about crazy things now. You are going to read about a room at the Crazy House Hotel in Da Lat. Are you curious about this hotel? Let's find more in your reading passage today.

Phương án 2: Chatting

Lời dẫn:

– In the previous lesson, you already had a simple plan of your house. So now, would you like to tell me what you want your house to be? (nice/ beautiful/ comfortable/ modern/ etc.)

– Do you want your house to completely look like the others?

– In fact, we have different designers with different ideas and in the reading passage today, you are going to read about a room at the Crazy House Hotel in Da Lat. Do you feel curious about this hotel? Let's discover in our lesson today.

Phương án 3: Hangman/ Shark Attack

Key:

CRAZY/STRANGE

Hoạt động 2: Study skills (3 minutes)

GV yêu cầu HS đọc 'Study skills box' và giải thích bất cứ từ nào mà các em chưa rõ, để đảm bảo các em nắm được kỹ năng dự đoán thông tin trước khi vào bài đọc.

Study skills – Reading

Prediction

Predicting makes reading easy.

Before reading, look at the picture, design and title.

Decide what the topic of the text is.

Think about what you know about the topic.

Hoạt động 3: Read (20 minutes)

a. Exercise 1 – p. 22 – Student’s Book

1 Look at the text (don’t read it). Answer the questions.

1. What type of text is it?
2. What’s the title of this page? What’s the topic?
3. Write three things you know about Da Lat.



To: mi@fastmail.com;
superphong@bamboo.com
Subject: Weekend away!

Hi Phong,

How are you? I’m in Da Lat with my parents. We are staying at the Crazy House Hotel. Wow! It really is crazy.

Da Lat is nice. It’s cool all year round! There are a lot of things to see and lots of tourists too.

There are ten rooms in the hotel. They are named after different animals. There is a Kangaroo room, an Eagle room, and even an Ant Room. I’m staying in the Tiger room. It’s called the Tiger room because there’s a big tiger on the wall.

The Tiger is between the bathroom door and the window. The bed is under the window – but the window is a strange shape. I put my bag under the bed. I put my books on the shelf. There is a lamp, a wardrobe and a desk. There are clothes on the floor – it’s messy, just like my bedroom at home.

You should visit here, it’s great.
See you soon!
Nick



• GV cho HS đọc yêu cầu bài tập 1, sau đó cho HS trả lời nhanh các câu hỏi bên dưới.

• GV gọi vài HS trả lời câu hỏi trước lớp.

b. Exercise 2 – p. 22 – Student’s Book

2 Quickly read the text. Check your ideas from 1.

GV cho HS đọc trong vòng 2 phút và chốt lại phần trả lời câu 1, 2 của bài tập 1:

1. It’s an e-mail.

2. The title is “A room at the Crazy House Hotel, Da Lat”. The topic is Nick’s weekend at the Crazy House Hotel.

c. Exercise 3 – p. 22 – Student’s Book

3 Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. Is Nick with his brother and sister?
2. How many rooms are there in the hotel?
3. Why is the room called the Tiger room?
4. Where is his bag?

Lời dẫn:

– Now I give you only 5 minutes to find the answer to each question. Remember to underline or highlight the word, phrase or sentence (from the reading passage) that shows you the answer.

– Check your answers with your partner first, then we’ll check together.

Key:

1. No, he isn’t.
2. There are ten rooms.
3. Because there’s a big tiger on the wall.
4. It’s under the bed.

d. Exercise 4 – p. 22 – Student’s Book

4 Are these things in the room?

a window	a sofa	a cooker
a cupboard	a shelf	a lamp
a desk	a poster	a CD player
		a tiger

Lời dẫn:

– Which room is Nick staying at? (The Tiger room)

– Now read the passage describing his room and

check if these things are in the room. You can underline or highlight the key word you can find from the passage.

Key:

a window – a lamp – a tiger – a shelf – a desk

Hoạt động 4: Speaking (18 minutes)

Exercise 5 & 6 – p. 22 – Student’s Book

5 Create a new room for the hotel. Draw a plan of the room.

6 Show your plan to your partner then describe the room to other students in the class.

Lời dẫn:

– Do you want to have your own room in this crazy house?

– Try to draw a plan of your room, then show your plan to your partner.

– And we’ll have an exhibition and a vote for the best plan. I’ll call some of you to come here to describe your room in front of the class. Others will listen and vote for both the best plan and the best designer!

(Đối với HS chưa nắm vững kiến thức, GV cho HS đọc lại đoạn miêu tả phòng “Tiger”: The tiger is between ... just like my bedroom at home.)

... I think we’ll have many famous designers in the near future. Is that right?

One more thing, remember to keep your plans for the next lesson.

Homework (2 minutes)

1. Do Exercise D1, 2 & 3 (p. 12, 13, 14) – Workbook.
2. Prepare ideas and images for the Project (p. 25 – Student’s Book)

Trình bày bảng

Unit 2 – My home

Lesson 5 – Skills 1

I. Hidden word: Crazy House Hotel

II. Study skills (Reading): Prediction

III. Reading

1. Predict
2. Check the Prediction
3. Answer the questions
4. Circle the correct answer

IV. Speaking

1. Draw a plan of a room in the Crazy House Hotel
2. Describe the room in the front of the class

V. Homework

Giáo án 6: Unit 2: My home

LESSON 6: SKILLS 2

I. Objectives:

By the end of the lesson, students can:

- use the lexical items related to the topic 'My home'
- listen to get information about rooms and houses
- write an e-mail to a friend

II. Procedures: Các bước tiến hành

Hoạt động 1: Warm-up (5 minutes)

Chơi trò chơi 'Noughts and Crosses'

Lời dẫn:

– Do you remember Nick's e-mail to Phong?

– I would like to check how much you can remember about his stay at the Crazy House Hotel with this game, Noughts and Crosses.

+ Look at the 'noughts and crosses' grid on the board. There is a question numbered from 1 to 9 in each square.

+ One team is X and the other team is O.

+ The member of each team, in turn, chooses the number of the questions and tries to give the correct answers. If your answer is correct, I will erase the number and write either X or O.

+ The team who has a straight line either vertically, horizontally or diagonally is the winner.

1	2	3
4	5	6
7	8	9

– Questions:

1. What is the name of the room where Nick is staying? (Tiger)
2. How many rooms are there in the hotel? (10)
3. Is there a wardrobe in Nick's room? (Yes)
4. Where is that Crazy House Hotel? (In Da Lat)
5. Are the rooms named after different flowers? (No)

6. Is Nick's room tidy or untidy? (It's untidy)
7. Where is the bed in Nick's room? (Under the Window)
8. Why is the room called the Tiger room? (Because there's a big tiger on the wall)
9. Who is Nick staying with? (With his parents)

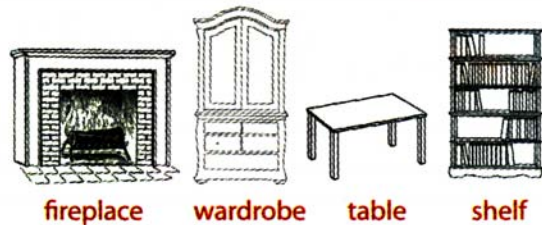
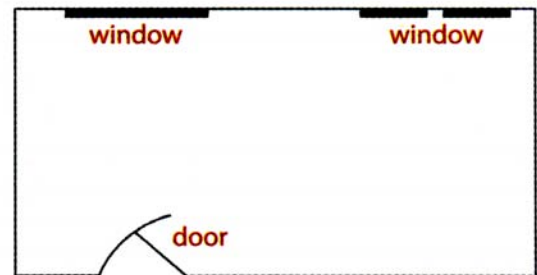
Hoạt động 2: Listening (10 minutes)

Listen and draw the furniture in the correct place.

Lời dẫn:

– In the previous lesson, you already read about Nick's room at the Crazy House Hotel. In the listening lesson today, Nick's parents are describing their room at the hotel.

– First of all, look at the plan of the room and the furniture on page 23 and guess, where to put the furniture, in your opinion:



– ... Thank you! And now, listen to the recording twice. For the first time, listen to what Nick's mum and dad said about their room and check your prediction. For the second time, listen again and draw the picture in the correct place as you listen.

– Have you finished? Check the answer with your partner first.

– Who can show your plan of the room and describe it?

...

– Now, listen to the recording for the last time and check together:

Audio script:

Nick's mum: Nick's staying in the Tiger room. We're staying in the Bear room. There's a big bear near the door. The bear is actually a fireplace. In the far corner, there is a window. The shelves are right in front of it. Next to the shelves is a big bed. There's a wardrobe next to the bed.

Nick's dad: Oh, there are also two other windows in the room. In front of these windows, there's a sofa, a table and two stools. We like the room because it's comfortable.

Hoạt động 3: Writing (25 – 28 minutes)


1. Writing tips:

Lời dẫn:

– Do Nick and his parents like their rooms at the Crazy House Hotel? (Yes, they do.)

– That's right. And you know, Nick was so excited that he wrote an e-mail to Phong to tell him about his stay there.

– Have you ever written an e-mail to your friend? Are you sure how to write it? Let's check the writing tips we have in our book.



Writing tips – How to write an e-mail to a friend

1. In the subject line, write briefly what the e-mail is about.
2. Begin the e-mail with a greeting (Dear/Hi/Hello...)
3. The introduction is the first paragraph. We can ask about his/her health, thank him/her for the previous e-mail or write the reasons for e-mailing, etc.
4. In the body, write the subject(s) of the e-mail. Write each subject in a new paragraph.
5. The conclusion is the last paragraph. It includes the closing remarks: saying goodbye, asking your friend to write back, sending your regards to his/her family, etc.

• GV gọi 5 HS đọc 5 ý chính trong phần Writing tips và ghi chép các ý chính lên bảng và cho HS

ghi chép vào vở:

Part 1: Subject (Chủ đề của email)

Part 2: Greeting (Lời chào đầu thư)

Part 3: Introduction (Phần đầu thư)

Part 4: Body (Phần thân/ nội dung chính của thư)

Part 5: Conclusion (Phần kết thư)

• GV giải thích bằng Tiếng Việt nếu HS chưa hiểu được nội dung ghi nhớ này.

• GV dành thời gian kiểm tra lại xem HS đã hiểu cách viết email chưa bằng cách đặt câu hỏi:

+ How many parts are there in an e-mail to your friend?

+ What are they?

+ What should you remember when writing each part?

2. Exercise 2 – p. 23 – Student's Book: Matching/ Labelling

Ở phần này, nếu có thể, GV nên photo lại bức email của Nick gửi Phong và cho HS vừa nhận biết các phần chính của một bức email, vừa làm bài mẫu cho phần bài tập kế tiếp.

2 Read Nick's e-mail again. Identify the subject, greeting, introduction, body and conclusion of the e-mail.

Lời dẫn:

– Read Nick's e-mail again and identify the different parts in the e-mail.

– Right. Who can now tell me, which is the subject of the e-mail? ... the greeting/ introduction/ body/ conclusion ... ?

Subject	Weekend away!
Greeting	Hi Phong
Introduction	How are you? I'm in Da Lat with my parents. We are staying at the Crazy House Hotel. Wow! It really is crazy.
Body	Da Lat is nice. It's cool all year round! There are a lot of things to see and lots of tourists too. There are ten rooms in the hotel. They are named after different animals. There is a Kangaroo room, an Eagle room, and even an Ant room. I'm staying in the Tiger room. It's called the Tiger room because there's a big tiger on the wall.

Body	The Tiger is between the bathroom door and the window. The bed is under the window – but the window is a strange shape. I put my bag under the bed. I put my books on the shelf. There is a lamp, a wardrobe and a desk. There are clothes on the floor – it's messy, just like my bedroom at home.
Conclusion	You should visit here, it's great. See you soon! Nick

3. Exercise 3 – p. 23 – Student's Book

3 Read the e-mail below and correct it. Write the correct version in the space provided.



Lời dẫn:

- Have a look at this e-mail. Can you recognize the 5 main parts of an e-mail?
- Good. But you see, there's something wrong with

it. Who can recognize?

– Right. There are some mistakes of punctuation and capitalization in the e-mail. Now correct the mistakes, then write the correct version in the space provided. Are you clear? Start now, please.

– I would like one of you to come to the board and finish the exercise on my poster.

...

– Time's up now. Let's check together!

From: mi@fastmail.com
To: sophia@quickmail.com
Subject: My house

hi sophia

thanks for your e-mail now i'll tell you about my house. i live with my parents and younger brother in a town house it's big. there are six rooms: a living room, a kitchen, two bedrooms and two bathrooms i like my bedroom best. we're moving to an apartment soon. what about you? where do you live? tell me in your next e-mail.

best wishes,
Mi

4. Exercise 4 – p. 23 – Student's Book

4 Write an e-mail to Nick. Tell him about your idea for the new room of the Crazy House Hotel.

- **Plan**
Brainstorm vocabulary about your room.
- **Draft**
Write a draft.
- **Check**
Check your draft: Is the punctuation correct? Is the capitalisation correct? Does it have all necessary parts?

– You already know how to write an e-mail to your friend, but in order to have a good letter, the process of writing is very important and necessary.

– Look at Exercise 4 in your book and list the three steps you should follow.

1. Plan (Lên dàn ý, dàn bài)
2. Draft (Phác thảo, viết nháp)
3. Check (Kiểm tra lại)

– What do you have to do in each step?

– Now look at the plan of the room you created in the previous lesson and write an e-mail to Nick, tell him your idea for the new room of the Crazy House Hotel. Remember to go through all three steps and write your e-mail on an A4 paper.

– ... Have you finished your writing? Stick your e-mail on the wall and I'll check some of yours.

– Who can read your e-mail?

What do you think about his/ her e-mail? Does it have all the necessary parts? Is there any interesting idea to share? Etc.

Homework (2 minutes)

1. Finish your e-mail in the notebook (if you don't have enough time in class).
2. Do Exercise E1, 2 – p. 15 – Workbook.
3. Finish your Project.

Trình bày bảng

Unit 2 – My home

Lesson 6 – Skills 2

I. Noughts and Crosses

II. Listen

III. Write

1. Necessary parts of an e-mail:

- Part 1: Subject
- Part 2: Greeting
- Part 3: Introduction
- Part 4: Body
- Part 5: Conclusion

2. Process of writing:

- Plan
- Draft
- Check

IV. Homework

Giáo án 7: Unit 2: My home

LESSON 7: LOOKING BACK - PROJECT

I. Objectives:

By the end of the lesson, students can:

- use words for types of houses, furniture and family
- use prepositions to describe where things are
- describe things using *there is/ there isn't/ there are/ there aren't*
- describe where things are in a house

II. Procedures: Các bước tiến hành

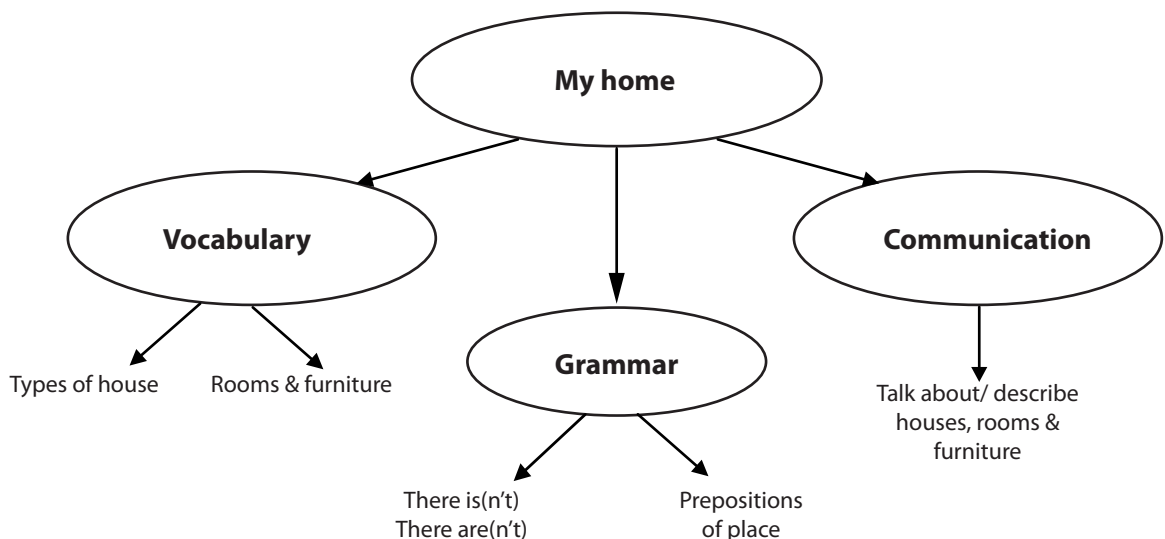
- GV khuyến khích HS làm việc cá nhân, hoàn thành các bài tập trong SGK ngay trên lớp để tự đánh giá xem mình đã lĩnh hội được toàn bộ kiến thức đã học hay chưa, từ đó, cải thiện những phần HS chưa nắm vững.
- GV động viên HS không mở lại sách hoặc vở khi làm các bài tập trong tiết học này.

Hoạt động 1: Network/ Mind map (5 minutes)

Lời dẫn:

- You've studied a lot about the topic 'My Home' in the previous lessons. You've already read, spoken, listened and written about homes and houses. Now it's time for you to revise all the things you've already learnt in this unit.

- Draw a mind map into your notebook, so that you can remember everything more clearly, dear!



Hoạt động 2: Practice (15 to 20 minutes)

- Try to finish all the exercises in your book individually, then compare in pairs before I check in front of the class, right?

- Try as hard as you can to remember all the things presented in this unit and don't refer back to the 6 previous lessons. If you have any difficulties while doing your exercises, don't hesitate to ask me or your partner. All right?

- Start now, please!

LOOKING BACK

Vocabulary

1 Put the words into the correct groups. Do you want to add any words to each group?

living room	attic	bed	hall
picture	villa	cupboard	
apartment	chest of drawers	town house	
bathroom	bedroom	wardrobe	
sofa	stilt house	kitchen	
dishwasher	desk	country house	

Types of building	Rooms	Furniture

Grammar

2 Make sentences. Use appropriate prepositions of place.



1. The boy _____ 2. The dog _____ 3. The cat _____



4. The cat _____ 5. The girl _____ 6. The boy _____

3 Look at the picture and complete the sentences. Use **There is/There are/There isn't/There aren't.**



- _____ a clock on the wall.
- _____ books on the bookshelf.
- _____ a desk next to the bookshelf.
- _____ two posters on the wall.
- _____ a laptop and a lamp on the desk.
- _____ three small plants in the corner.

4 Turn the sentences in 3 into questions.

Example:

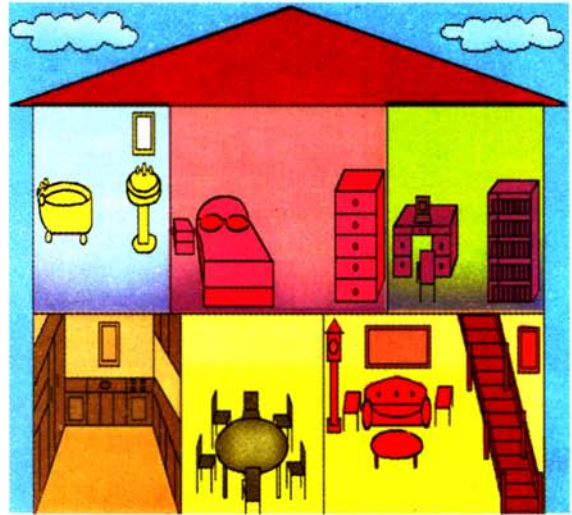
1. Is there a clock on the wall?

5 Write six sentences to describe your bedroom.

Example: There's a big bed next to the door.

Communication

6 Work in groups. Take turns to draw a cat in the house below. Other students ask questions to find the cat.



in under behind next to
on between in front of

Example:

A: Where is the cat?

B: Is it on the bed?

A: No, it isn't.

C: Is it under the table?

A: Yes, it is.

Finished! Now you can...	✓	✓✓	✓✓✓
• use words for types of houses, furniture and family			
• use prepositions to describe where things are			
• describe things using <i>there is/there isn't/there are/there aren't</i>			
• describe where things are in a house			

Key:

1. Vocabulary: Exercise 1 (p. 24)

Types of building	Rooms	Furniture
villa, apartment, town house, stilt house, country house	living room, hall, bathroom, bedroom, kitchen, attic	picture, cupboard, chest of drawers, wardrobe, sofa, dishwasher, desk, bed
cottage, farmhouse, bungalow	dining room, guest room, utility room	stool, armchair

2. Grammar:

2.1 Exercise 2 (p. 24)

1. The boy is on the table.
2. The dog is in front of the kennel.
3. The cat is between the bookshelf and the sofa.
4. The cat is behind the computer.
5. The girl is in the armchair.
6. The boy is next to the armchair.

2.2 Exercise 3 (p.24)

1. There is
2. There are
3. There is
4. There aren't
5. There is
6. There aren't

2.3 Exercise 4 (p.24)

1. Is there a clock on the wall?
2. Are there books on the bookshelf?
3. Is there a desk next to the bookshelf?
4. Are there two posters on the wall?
5. Is there a laptop and a lamp on the desk?
6. Are there three small plants in the corner?

2.4 Exercise 5 (p.24)

Student's answers

3. Communication: Exercise 6 (p. 14)

Student's answers

4. Self-assessment

Lời dẫn:

- I see that you're working very hard today. Now check how much you have gained from this unit, so that I can help you improve your English.

- Finish your self-assessment box and then tell me your result, please! Which part are you best at? Which one do you want to improve? ...

Hoạt động 3: Project (20 to 25 minutes)

GV mời một số nhóm trình bày Project "Our strange house". Các nhóm còn lại lắng nghe, đưa nhận xét về cả những ưu điểm và những mặt còn hạn chế của nhóm bạn. GV đưa lời nhận xét cuối cùng, chú ý động viên những nhóm có tinh thần cộng tác cao, kết hợp ăn ý, diễn đạt trôi chảy, có ý tưởng tốt và minh họa phong phú.

Lời dẫn:

- To continue with the topic "My Home" in this unit, it's time for you to present your ideas about your strange house in the future. Which group volunteers to present first?

- So, the other groups pay attention to your friends' presentation and don't forget to give your comments after that.

Homework (2 minutes)

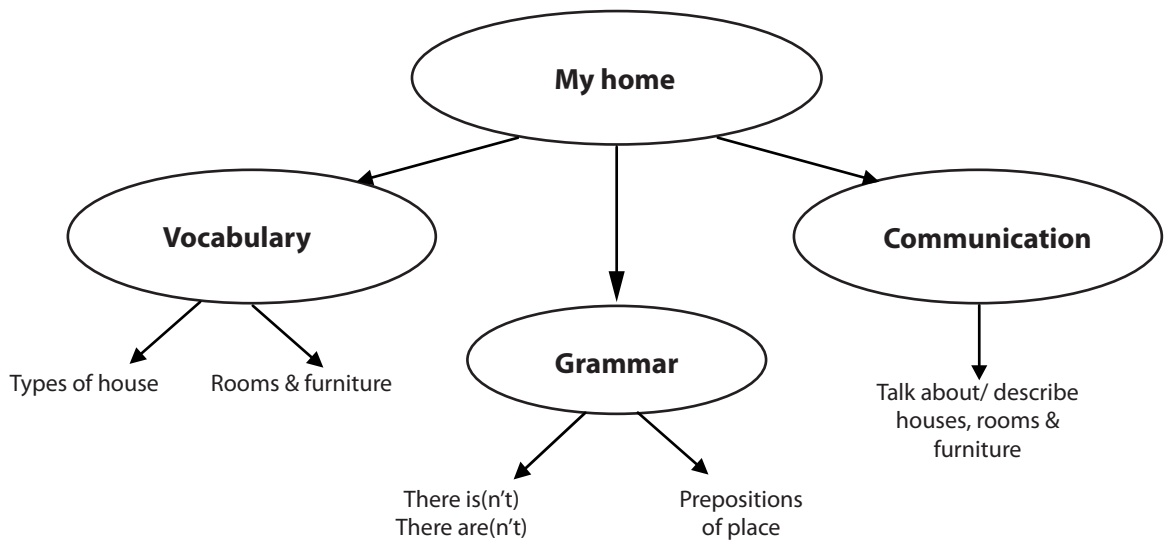
1. Write-it-up: Write a short passage about your strange house in the future.
2. Prepare for the next lesson.

Trình bày bảng

Unit 2 – My Home

Lesson 7 – Looking back & Project

I. Revision: Network



II. Practice

III. Project: Your strange house

IV. Homework

Giáo án 1: Unit 3: My friends

LESSON 1: GETTING STARTED

A surprise guest

Thời gian: 45 phút

I. Objectives:

By the end of the lesson, students can:

- use the lexical items related to the topic 'My friends'
- use vocabulary and structures about personality
- identify and practise the language of polite requests
- guess the meaning of new words based on clues including pictures and surrounding words

II. Procedures: Các bước tiến hành

Hoạt động 1: Warm-up (3 to 5 minutes)

Phương án 1: Chơi trò chơi 'Memorising game'



Luật chơi:

- Cả lớp chia thành 2 đội Cats và Dogs, gập sách lại.
- GV cho lớp xem bức tranh trang 26 (đã được phóng to A2 hoặc sử dụng màn hình máy chiếu) trong 30 giây.
- HS ghi nhớ nội dung bức tranh.
- GV giấu tranh đi, hỏi 5 câu hỏi về nội dung tranh.
- Đội nào có câu trả lời rung chuông hoặc giơ tay.

Lời dẫn:

– The class is divided into 2 teams Cats and Dogs.

– Look at the picture in 30 seconds; try to remember its content.

– Then I will ask you 5 questions about it. Who answers correctly and faster is the winner.

– Are you ready? OK, great. Let's look at this very beautiful picture! (HS nhìn tranh trong 30 giây)

Lời dẫn:

– OK, boys and girls, time's up. It's time to show your talent.

– My first question is: How many boys and girls are there in the picture? (4)

– Good job, Nam is correct. Now, the second question is: What are the boys doing? (One is reading a magazine and the other is eating biscuits)

– Great, Vy, you have a good memory. And here is the third question: What is the name of the magazine? (4 Teen)

– Well done, Nhi, I will not let you wait more, my fourth question is: Where is the dog sitting? (In front of the boys)

– Excellent Tuan, and the last chance for you now, all of you must try your best. What is behind the biscuits? (A bottle of fruit juice)

– Well, you did very well in this team. Cats have 3 right answers, Dogs have 2. So the winner is Cats. A very big applause for them please.

Phương án 2: Small interview

Luật chơi:

- GV hỏi về hoạt động cuối tuần hoặc ngoại khóa của học sinh.

Lời dẫn:

– Now, the whole class, I am sure all of you here always like the weekend or summer time because it is when you have free time to do what you like.

– What do you often do on the weekend?

– Have you even been to a picnic?

– What do you often do when you go on a picnic?

– Who do you often go with?

– What do you bring when you are on a picnic?

Hoạt động 2: Elicit the dialogue (15 minutes)

Listen and read.

- Phuc:** This is a great idea, Duong. I love picnics!
- Duong:** Me too, Phuc. I think Lucas likes them too.
(Dog barks)
- Phuc:** Ha ha. Lucas is so friendly!
- Duong:** Can you pass me the biscuits please?
- Phuc:** Yes, sure.
- Duong:** Thank you. What are you reading, Phuc?
- Phuc:** 4Teen. It's my favourite magazine!
- Duong:** Oh, look! It's Mai. And she is with someone.
- Phuc:** Oh, who's that? She has glasses and she has long black hair.
- Duong:** I don't know. They're coming over.
- Mai:** Hi Phuc. Hi Duong. This is my friend Chau.
- Phuc & Duong:** Hi, Chau. Nice to meet you.
- Chau:** Nice to meet you too.
- Duong:** Would you like to sit down? We have lots of food.
- Mai:** Oh, sorry, we can't. It's time to go home. This evening, we are working on our school project.
- Duong:** Sounds great. I'm going to the judo club with my brother. How about you, Phuc?
- Phuc:** I'm visiting my grandma and grandpa.
- Chau:** OK, see you later!
- Phuc & Duong:** Bye!

Lời dẫn:

- Everyone, look at this picture now; this is also a pastime activity that the boys and the girls are doing.
- What do you think they are doing? Yes, it's true, they are having a picnic.
- It's a good way for you to relax after your hard-working days.
- Phuc and Duong are talking then they see two girls coming, one is new to them, and she is their surprise guest. So can you tell me, what does 'surprise' mean?
- Well, correct, and we always like good surprises right?
- Now, let's listen to see what the boys and girls are talking about.

GV cho HS nghe 2 lần sau đó làm bài tập 1a.

Bài tập 1a

a Put a suitable word in each blank.

1. Phuc and Duong are having a _____.
2. Lucas _____ picnics.
3. Lucas is a _____ dog.
4. Phuc and Duong see _____ and _____.
5. Chau has _____, and she has _____.
6. This evening, Mai and Chau are _____.

Lời dẫn:

– So you have listened to the dialogue, let's see if you can understand it well by putting a suitable word / phrase in each blank.

– I would like you to do individually then you can discuss with your partner next to you.

Lớp làm cá nhân sau đó sẽ thảo luận với bạn bên cạnh.

Key:

1. picnic
2. likes/loves
3. friendly
4. Mai and Chau
5. glasses; long back hair
6. working on their school project

Bài tập 1b

b Polite requests and suggestions Put the words in the correct order.

Making and responding to a request

1. can/pass/the/please/biscuits/you/me?
2. sure/yes

Making and responding to a suggestion

1. sit down/like to/would/you?
2. sorry/oh/can't/we

Lời dẫn:

- Let's do some more study on the dialogue, is it OK?
- What does Duong say to Phuc when he wants some biscuits?
- Yes, correct 'Can you pass me the biscuits, please?'
- And what does Phuc answer? – 'Yes, sure.'
- Correct, 'Would you like to sit down?'
- And what does Mai say? – She says: Oh, sorry, we can't.

- So, how do we say when we want to ASK FOR HELP?

CAN YOU + V...?

- So, how do we say when we want to make a SUGGESTION?

WOULD YOU LIKE TO + V...?

Bài tập 2

2 Game: Lucky Number

Cut 6 pieces of paper. Number them 1-6. In pairs, take turns to choose a number. Look at the grid and either ask for help or make a suggestion.

1. pass the pen	4. listen to music
2. play outside	5. turn on the lights
3. move the chair	6. have a picnic

If it is 1, 3, 5, ask for help.

Example:

A: Can you _____ please?

B: Yes, sure.

If it is 2, 4, 6, make a suggestion.

Example:

A: Would you like to _____?

B: Yes, I'd love to./ Oh, sorry, I can't.

Bài tập bổ sung luyện tập với 2 mẫu câu trên (nếu còn thời gian)

GV đưa ra 5 bức tranh, mỗi bức tranh tương ứng với 1 tình huống.

HS lên rút một bức tranh bất kỳ và đưa ra một lời đề nghị giúp đỡ và một lời gợi ý tương ứng.

GV và HS làm mẫu một bức tranh trước.



Lời dẫn:

- The whole class, please practise more with these models.

- You will choose a picture here in my hand, and then make both a REQUEST and a SUGGESTION that go with the picture.

- For example, I have a boy here who is really hungry. How does he ASK FOR HELP?

- True, he can say: Can you give me some food, please?

Can you give me something to eat please, etc...?

And of course, we will help him by saying: Yes, sure. or OK.

- Besides, if we see that he is hungry, how do we MAKE A SUGGESTION?

- Right, we can say: Would you like to have some bread? or Would you like to eat some noodles?

- And what do you think he will say?

- He will say: Thanks a lot, you are so kind.

- Now, please do the same with the rest please.



I'M TIRED



Cup of Cafe Latte. Tumblr.com



Hoạt động 3: Adjectives for personality (20 minutes)

Adjectives for personality

- 3 Choose the adjectives in the box to complete the sentences. Look for the highlighted words. Listen, check and repeat the words.

talkative clever boring creative shy
kind confident hard-working friendly funny

1. Mina is very _____. She likes to draw pictures. She always has lots of new ideas.



2. Thu is _____. He likes to help his friends.



3. Minh Duc is _____. He isn't shy. He likes to meet new people.



4. Kim is very _____. She's always on the phone, chatting to friends.



5. Mai is _____. She understands things quickly and easily.



Lời dẫn:

– Sometimes, when we come across a new word, we don't need to use a dictionary to look it up. We can guess the meaning by looking at the surrounding words. Today, we will learn some adjectives for personality in that way. Now, look at me, how do you think I feel now? (GV che miệng ngáp, tỏ vẻ mệt mỏi).

– True, I am sleepy or I am tired.

– Now, please choose one word in the blue box to fill in each blank. Remember to look at the picture and the highlighted words. Please work individually and check with your partner after you finish.

Key:

1. creative 2. kind 3. confident
4. talkative 5. clever

GV bật đĩa cho HS nghe lại để kiểm tra.

GV đọc từ mới cho HS đọc theo hoặc dùng băng sau mỗi từ mới, lưu ý HS đọc đúng trọng âm.

Elicit model sentences

Lời dẫn:

All the adjectives that we have just learnt are of personality. So let's see how our friends are. Take me, for example I am very talkative (GV viết lên bảng). How about you, Vy?

Oh, Vy is shy. (GV viết lên bảng). Sau đó gạch chân động từ to be (am, is) và hỏi HS: What goes after the subject?

S + am, is, are + adj

S + am, is, are NOT + adj

Bài tập 4

Học sinh làm việc cá nhân sau đó trao đổi đáp án với bạn bên cạnh.

1. am 2. is 3. isn't 4. aren't 5. is 6. are

4 Complete the sentences.

1. I ___ hard-working. (+) 4. We ___ creative. (-)
2. Phuc ___ kind. (+) 5. My dog ___ friendly. (+)
3. Chau ___ shy. (-) 6. They ___ funny. (+)

Bài tập 5

5 Game: Friendship Flower

In groups of four, each member writes in the flower petal two adjectives for personalities which you like about the others. Compare and discuss which two words best describe each person.



Kết bài (2 minutes)

Now please tell me what you have learnt today, Nhi please! Yes, you are right, through the lesson we can now know how to ask for help, how to make a suggestion and how to say about the personality. Please practise more with your partner after school, OK?

Homework (2 minutes)

1. Make 2 dialogues of ASKING FOR HELP and MAKING A SUGGESTION.
2. Write a passage about your family members' personality.

Trình bày bảng

Monday, May 25th, 2015

Unit 3 – My friends

Lesson 1 – Getting started – A surprise guest

I. Memorizing Game

II. Listen and read

1. Put a suitable word in each blank
2. Make polite requests and suggestions

CAN YOU + V-inf?

WOULD YOU LIKE TO + V-inf?

3. Lucky number
4. Choose the adjectives of personality

S + BE + ADJ S + BE NOT + ADJ

5. Complete the sentences
6. Friendship flower

III. Homework

Giáo án 2: Unit 3: My friends

LESSON 2: A CLOSER LOOK 1

I. Objectives:

By the end of the lesson, students can:

- use the lexical items related to the topic 'My friends'
- pronounce correctly the sounds /p/ and /b/ in isolation and in context
- use the vocabulary about the body parts and appearance
- use the verb 'HAVE' to talk about appearance description

II. Procedures: Các bước tiến hành

Hoạt động 1: Warm-up (3 to 5 minutes)

Phương án 1: Chơi trò chơi 'Who is faster?'

Luật chơi:

- GV chỉ vào các bộ phận trên gương mặt và trên cơ thể.
- Lớp chia thành 2 đội, mỗi đội cử đại diện lên nói to tên của các bộ phận đó.
- Ai nói đúng hơn là người chiến thắng.

Lời dẫn:

– Today, we will learn about body parts, so firstly let's see how many names of body parts you have known. I will point to a part in my face or in my body, and then you will tell me its name. Who is correct and faster is the winner. Now, let's start.

Phương án 2: Chơi trò chơi 'Mutual Understanding'

Lớp chia thành 2 đội.

Mỗi đội cử đại diện một bạn lên bảng, mặt hướng xuống lớp (không được quay lại nhìn bảng, hoặc màn chiếu).

GV lần lượt đưa ra các hình ảnh hoặc từ vựng

- | | | |
|----------|-------------|---------|
| 1. Ears | 2. Nose | 3. Eyes |
| 4. Mouth | 5. Teeth | 6. Hand |
| 7. Hair | 8. Face ... | |

Tùy thuộc vào trình độ của HS, GV có thể đưa ra số lượng hình ảnh phù hợp (từ 4 đến 8).

Các bạn bên dưới sẽ giải thích bằng tiếng Anh cho bạn đó đoán được từ vừa giải thích.

Đội nào giải thích được nhiều hơn, đội đó thắng cuộc. GV có thể làm mẫu 1 từ để cho HS biết cách giải thích nhanh và dễ hiểu nhất. Ví dụ: Ears: There are two of these in our face. These parts help us hear sounds.

Lời dẫn:

– We have played quite a few games together; do you want to play another new game now?

– The game is Mutual Understanding. One representative from each team comes to the board without looking at the screen, listening to the other members explaining words one by one. The one who guesses more words correctly is the winner.

– You have one minute to play this game.

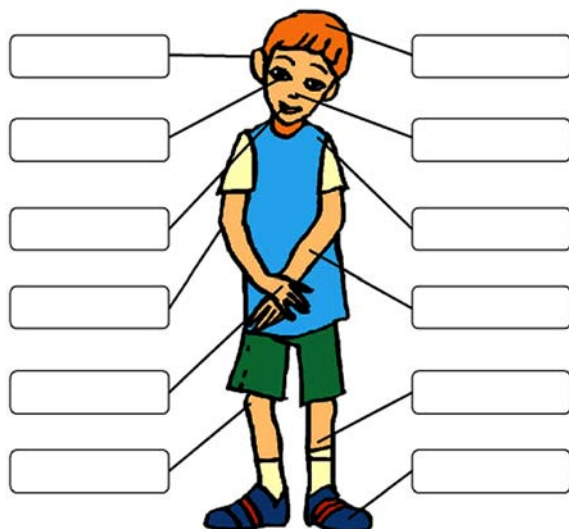
Phương án 3: Chơi trò chơi 'Name it'

Luật chơi:

- GV treo 2 tranh lên, 2 đội cử đại diện chơi trò tiếp sức, mỗi người viết tên một bộ phận cơ thể lên tranh.
- Ai viết đúng và nhiều hơn là người chiến thắng.

Lời dẫn:

Today, we will learn about body parts, so firstly let's see how many names of body parts you have known, let's fill in the blank the name of a body part in turn. One writes one word only.



Hoạt động 2: Teaching new words (10 minutes)

Lời dẫn:

– Everyone, you have shown me that your vocabulary is quite rich, but now, let's make it even richer by learning some more new words, alright?

New words:

1. elbow (n) : (reality)
2. fur (n) : (visual)
3. knee (n): (reality)
4. tail (n): (visual)
5. cheek (n): (reality)
6. shoulders (n): (reality)

Checking technique:

Respond to imperative sentences: Touch your ears, touch your elbow.....

Hoạt động 3: Practice (30 minutes)

1. Match the words with the pictures.

GV cho HS nối từ với bức tranh bia tạp chí 4Teen.

GV cho HS nghe băng và phát âm thật đúng.

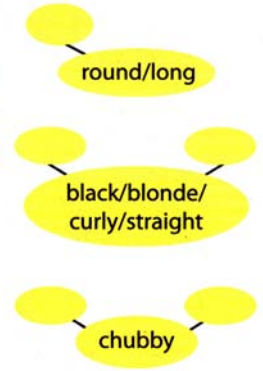
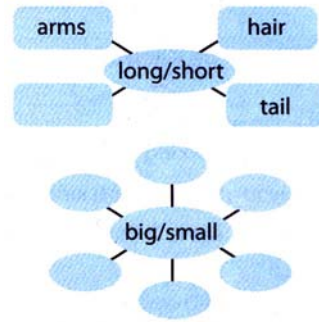
GV yêu cầu HS chỉ ra những bộ phận chỉ dùng với con vật (fur, tail...)

GV yêu cầu HS chỉ ra những bộ phận có dạng số nhiều (eyes, teeth...)

2. Create word webs.

2 Create word webs.

Example:



(GV cho HS làm cá nhân, điền danh từ chỉ bộ phận trên cơ thể người vào ô trống)

Each body part goes with some adjectives, for example: long hair, small teeth, etc ... so now, please fill in the blank with the body parts that go with these adjectives.

Key:

long/short: legs, arms, tail, hair

big/small: head, hands, ears, feet, eyes, nose

black/blonde/curly/straight: hair, fur

chubby: face, cheeks

round/long: face.

PRONUNCIATION of /b/ and /p/ sounds.

GV cho HS xem clip về cách phát âm của 2 âm sau đó cho HS luyện tập phát âm sao cho chính xác bằng bài 3,4,5.

Vocabulary

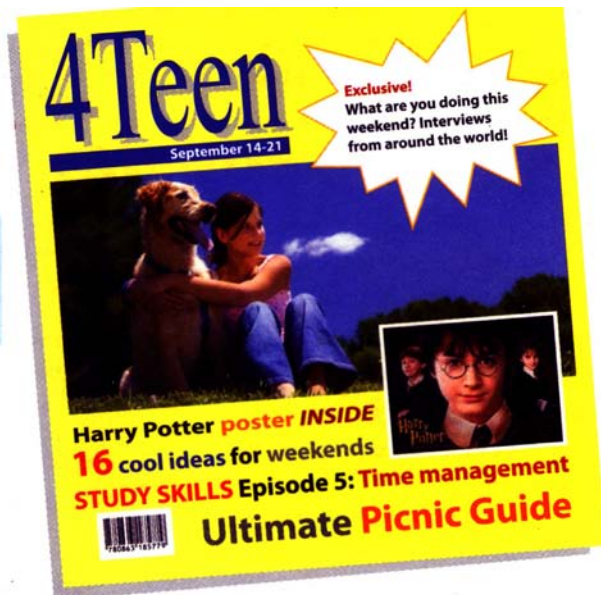
Appearances

- arm ears elbow eyes face foot
 fur glasses hand head knee
 leg mouth neck nose tail
 tooth cheek finger shoulders

1 Match the words with the pictures on the cover page of 4Teen magazine. Listen, check and repeat the words.

Watch out! 

eye – eyes tooth - teeth
 hand – hands foot - feet



English B & P Sounds

To make the 'P' sound,
you blow air out
of your mouth.

UGoEigo.com

3 Listen and repeat.

picnic biscuits blonde
black big patient

4 Listen and circle the words you hear.

/b/	/p/
band	play
brown	ponytail
big	picnic
bit	pretty

5 Listen. Then practise the chant. Notice the rhythm.

We're **having** a **picnic**
We're **having** a **picnic**
Fun! Fun! Fun!
We're **bringing** some **biscuits**
We're **bringing** some **biscuits**
Yum! Yum! Yum!
We're **playing** together
We're **playing** together
Hurrah! Hurrah! Hurrah!

Nếu còn thời gian, GV có thể cho HS chơi thêm một trò chơi:

Identifying the correct sound

GV đọc các từ có chứa hai âm trên, gọi hai HS lên bảng và nói to âm của từ đó.

Book, packet, put, bowl, pour, poor, buy, by, pay...

Nếu không còn thời gian, GV có thể chuyển sang hoạt động dạy Ngữ Pháp.

Grammar

1. Elicit the structure with the verb 'HAVE' for description

GV dùng bức tranh 4Teen Magazine đưa ra các câu miêu tả, và yêu cầu học sinh chỉ đúng nhân vật mình vừa miêu tả, sau đó nhắc lại theo GV.

Lời dẫn:

– Everyone, look at this magazine cover 4Teen, I will call out one description, you will point to the one I am talking about while repeating what I've just said, OK?

– She has straight hair.

– He has short black hair.

– This one has brown fur.

– It has a long tail.

– They have straight noses.

– He has blue eyes.

GV gọi một đến hai học sinh để thực hành mẫu câu nghi vấn:

How about you, Vy? Do you have long hair? → Yes, I do.

– Now, Mạnh, does she have long hair? → Yes, she does.

– Now, Tien and Duy, do you have black eyes? → Yes, we do.

– Do they have black eyes, Linh? → Yes, they do.

2. GV hỏi học sinh cấu trúc dùng động từ 'HAVE' để miêu tả, sau đó cho HS viết mẫu câu vào vở như trên bảng

"HAVE" for description

S + have/has + adj + N(s)

Do, Does + S + have + adj + N (s)? → Yes, S + do/does

No, S + don't/ doesn't

3. GV kiểm tra lại:

Meaning, Pronunciation, Form, Use:

– When do we use this structure?

- We say: Does he has or does he have?

- We raise our tune up or turn it down when asking:
Do you have brown hair? ...

Practice with grammar

Bài tập 6:

GV cho HS làm việc cá nhân sau đó thảo luận với bạn bên cạnh.

6 Look at the cover page of 4Teen magazine and make the sentences.

1. the girl/short hair?

_____.

No, she _____.

2. Harry Potter/big eyes?

_____.

3. The dog/a long tail.

_____.

4. And you, you/a round face?

_____.

Yes/I/. No/I.

_____.

Key:

1. - Does the girl have short hair?

- No, she doesn't.

2. Does Harry Potter have big eyes?

3. The dog has a long tail.

4. And you, do you have a round face?

Yes, I do./No, I don't.

Bài tập 7 và 8

7 Phuc, Duong and Mai are talking about their best friends. Listen and match.



a.

b.

c.

Phuc	
Duong	
Mai	

8 What are the missing words? Write is or has. Listen again and check your answers.

A. My best friend (1)_____ a round face and short hair. He isn't very tall but he (2)_____ kind and funny. I like him because he often makes me laugh.

B. My best friend is Lucas. He (3)_____ a brown nose. He (4)_____ friendly! I like him because he's always beside me.

C. My best friend (5)_____ short curly hair. She (6)_____ kind. She writes poems for me, and she always listens to my stories.

GV cho HS nhìn ba bức tranh, miêu tả từng nhân vật và đoán xem ai là bạn thân của từng nhân vật. Sau đó nghe lại lần 2 và làm bài tập 8. Lưu ý "to be + adj"; "have + noun".

Key:

Phuc: c

Duong: a

Mai: b

Audio script:

Hi, my name's Phuc. My best friend has a round face and short hair. He isn't very tall but he is kind and funny. I like him because he often makes me laugh.

Hello, I'm Duong. My best friend is Lucas. He has a brown nose. He is friendly! I like him because he's always beside me.

Hi, my name's Mai. My best friend has short curly hair. She is kind. She writes poems for me, and she always listens to my stories.

Key:

1. has 2. is 3. has 4. is 5. has 6. is

Nếu còn thời gian, GV có thể đưa thêm hình ảnh về 1 nhân vật nổi tiếng, HS hoạt động nhóm 4 và miêu tả về người đó.

e.g: David Beckham is a very famous soccer player. He is a very handsome man. He has nice blue eyes. He has short curly brown hair...



Homework (2 minutes)

1. Practise saying the words that have sounds /b/ and /p/.
2. Choose a famous person to write about.

Trình bày bảng

Monday, May 25th, 2015

Unit 3 – My friends

Lesson 2 – A closer look 1

I. Who is faster?

II. New words

- elbow (n)

- fur (n)
- knee (n)
- tail (n)
- cheek (n)
- shoulders (n)

III. Pronunciation of /b/ and /p/ sounds

IV. Grammar

S + have/has + adj + N(s)

Do, Does + S + have + adj + N (s)? → Yes, S + do/does

No, S + don't/ doesn't

V. Homework

Giáo án 3: Unit 3: My friends

LESSON 3: A CLOSER LOOK 2

I. Objectives:

By the end of the lesson, students can:

- use the present continuous tense to talk about future plans and arrangements
- use the lexical items related to the topic 'My friends'
- practise the language of polite invitation

II. Procedures: Các bước tiến hành

Hoạt động 1: Warm-up (3 to 5 minutes)

GV cho HS nghe lại bài hội thoại ở phần *Getting started*, và yêu cầu HS gạch chân tất cả các động từ dưới dạng V-ing.

Listen and read.

Phuc: This is a great idea, Duong. I love picnics!

Duong: Me too, Phuc. I think Lucas likes them too.
(Dog barks)

Phuc: Ha ha. Lucas is so friendly!

Duong: Can you pass me the biscuits please?

Phuc: Yes, sure.

Duong: Thank you. What are you reading, Phuc?

Phuc: *4Teen*. It's my favourite magazine!

Duong: Oh, look! It's Mai. And she is with someone.

Phuc: Oh, who's that? She has glasses and she has long black hair.

Duong: I don't know. They're coming over.

Mai: Hi Phuc. Hi Duong. This is my friend Chau.

Phuc & Duong: Hi, Chau. Nice to meet you.

Chau: Nice to meet you too.

Duong: Would you like to sit down? We have lots of food.

Mai: Oh, sorry, we can't. It's time to go home. This evening, we are **working** on our school project.

Duong: Sounds great. I'm going to the judo club with my brother. How about you, Phuc?

Phuc: I'm visiting my grandma and grandpa.

Chau: OK, see you later!

Phuc & Duong: Bye!

Lời dẫn:

– Let's listen to the conversation in *Getting started* part again, circle all the verbs that have -ING ending.

– The verbs ended with -ING are: reading, coming, working, going, visiting

Hoạt động 2: Practice with present continuous to talk about future plans (38 minutes)

GV cho HS nghe lại đoạn sau của phần hội thoại.

GV hỏi HS phân biệt động từ diễn tả hoạt động đang diễn ra với hoạt động nói về kế hoạch sắp xảy ra. GV chỉ ra những trạng từ chỉ thời gian giúp phân biệt điều đó.

Lời dẫn:

– Now listen to this part of the dialogue and show me which verbs show the actions happening at the moment of speaking and which verbs describe future plans.

– To do it correctly, you need to look at the contextual clues such as adverbs of time: tomorrow, this evening..... to show future time, now, at the moment, Look! to show speaking time.

Listen again to part of the conversation.

Duong: I don't know. They're **coming over**.

Mai: Hi, Phuc. Hi, Duong. This is my friend Chau.

Phuc & Duong: Hi, Chau. Nice to meet you.

Chau: Nice to meet you too.

Duong: Would you like to sit down? We have lots of food.

Mai: Oh, sorry, we can't. It's time to go home. This evening, we **are working** on our school project.

Duong: Sounds great. I'm **going** to the judo club with my brother. How about you Phuc?

Phuc: I'm **visiting** my grandma and grandpa.

Key:

Actions now

They're coming over

Plans for future

Example:

This evening, we are working on our school project.

I'm going to the judo club with my brother.

I'm visiting my grandma and grandpa.

GV giới thiệu mẫu câu và cho HS ghi chép vào vở.

Model sentences



GV cùng HS ôn lại nhanh quy tắc thêm -ING sau động từ:

Nguyên tắc thêm đuôi -ing (1): Động từ tận cùng bằng *e*, ta bỏ *e* rồi mới thêm *ing*

Ví dụ:

take => taking

drive => driving

Nhưng không bỏ *e* khi động từ tận cùng bằng *ee*.

Ví dụ:

see => seeing

agree => agreeing

Nguyên tắc thêm -ing (2): Động từ tận cùng bằng *ie*, ta biến *ie* thành *ying*.

Ví dụ:

die => dying

lie => lying

Nhưng động từ tận cùng bằng *y* vẫn giữ nguyên *y* khi thêm *ing*.

Ví dụ:

hurry => hurrying

Nguyên tắc thêm -ing (3): Ta nhân đôi phụ âm cuối trước khi thêm *-ing* khi động từ một âm tiết tận cùng bằng "1 nguyên âm + 1 phụ âm".

Ví dụ:

win => winning

put => putting

Nguyên tắc thêm -ing (4): Trong trường hợp động từ có từ hai âm tiết trở lên, ta chỉ nhân đôi phụ âm khi dấu nhấn âm rơi vào âm tiết cuối cùng.

Ví dụ:

per'mit => per'mitting

pre'fer => pre'ferring

Nhưng không nhân đôi phụ âm khi dấu nhấn âm không rơi vào âm tiết cuối.

Ví dụ:

open => opening

enter => entering

GV cho HS làm làm việc đôi, nói về việc mình đã lên kế hoạch làm trong thời gian sắp tới cho nhau nghe. Sau đó mời HS nói lại kế hoạch của hai bạn.

Ví dụ: *I am visiting my grandparents next week; I am going to Tan's birthday party this weekend. The one next to me, Vy, she is going to the movies with her brother this evening.*

Bài tập 3, 4

GV cho HS làm cá nhân và thảo luận với bạn bên cạnh.

3 Write sentences about Mai's plans for next week. Use the present continuous for future.

Example: She's finishing her homework. (finish)

1. She _____ a test. (take)

2. She _____ to her cooking class. (go)

3. She _____ a museum. (visit)

4. She _____ a barbecue with her friends. (have)

Things to do

test → Yes

cooking class → No

museum → Yes

BBQ → Yes

4 Sort them out! Write N for Now and F for Future.

1. Listen! Is that our telephone ringing?	
2. They're going to the Fine Arts Museum this Saturday.	
3. Where's Duong? He's doing judo in Room 2A.	
4. She's travelling to Da Nang tomorrow.	
5. Are you doing anything this Friday evening?	
6. Yes, I'm watching a film with my friends.	

Key:

- 1. is taking
- 2. isn't going
- 3. is visiting
- 4. is having

Key:

- 1. N
- 2. F
- 3. N
- 4. F
- 5. F
- 6. N

Bài tập 5: Game: Would you like to come to my party?

GV cho HS chuẩn bị phiếu có ghi các ngày từ thứ 2 đến chủ nhật, chọn 3 ngày cho 3 hoạt động: *have a party, prepare for the class project, go swimming.* Sau đó đi quanh lớp mời các bạn tham gia cùng mình. Những ngày còn lại, HS sẽ điền thêm hoạt động khác của bản thân. Cuối cùng, HS sẽ trình bày về kế hoạch của mình.

Lời dẫn:

We are learning about future plans now. I know you must have some personal plans for yourself. Let's assume you plan to – have a party, prepare for the class project and go swimming. Choose three days of the week to plan to do those three. And then go around the class and invite friends to join you. Then tell the class your plans.

5 Game: Would you like to come to my party?

Choose the day of the week that you plan to:

- have a party
- prepare for the class project
- go swimming

Then go around the class and invite friends to go to your party on the day you have decided. How many people can come to your party?

Example:

Nhưng's week						
Mon.	Tue.	Wed.	Thur.	Fri.	Sat.	Sun.
swimming			project	party		

Nhưng: Would you like to go to my party on Friday?

Phong: I'd love to. I'm not doing anything on Friday. /

Oh, I'm sorry I can't. I'm going swimming with my brother.



Homework (2 minutes)

– Write about your family member's plans.

Trình bày bảng

Monday, May 25th , 2015

Unit 3 – My friends

Lesson 3 – A closer look 2

I. Odd out

II. Grammar

Present continuous tense to talk about future plans

- I am not coming tonight, I am busy.
- This evening, they are watching a film.

III. Practice

IV. Homework

Giáo án 4: Unit 3: My friends

LESSON 4: COMMUNICATION

I. Objectives:

By the end of the lesson, students can:

- use the lexical items related to the topic 'My friends'
- use the present continuous to talk about future plans and arrangements
- talk about oneself and others' personality

II. Procedures: Các bước tiến hành

Hoạt động 1: Warm-up (3 to 5 minutes)

Guessing game

GV treo bản đồ thế giới lên bảng, giới thiệu hình 5 bạn mà lớp sẽ tìm hiểu trong bài học. Yêu cầu lớp gấp sách lại, cho HS thảo luận đoán xem các bạn đó từ đâu tới và tên có thể là gì. Sau đó mời 2 đến 3 học sinh lên dán hình của các bạn lên bản đồ thế giới và nói dự đoán của mình.

Với lớp có HS khá giỏi, GV có thể cho HS nhìn diện mạo của 5 bạn để đoán về tính cách của từng người.



Lời dẫn:

– Today we will have a chance to make friends from not only Viet Nam but also other countries. I have here 5 friends. Let's discuss what their names might be and where they are from.

– Now, Tu please, come to the board and stick each picture of a person onto a country in the world map you think he/she is from and guess his/her name.

Hoạt động 2: Extra Vocabulary (5 minutes)

1. Choir (n): visual



2. Firework competition (n. phr.): (visual)



3. Greyhound racing (n. phr.): (visual)



4. Field trip (n): (visual)



5. Temple (n): (visual)



Checking technique: Matching

Hoạt động 3: Practice (30 minutes)

Bài tập 1. Read this page from 4Teen magazine

GV cho HS đọc về 5 người bạn trả lời tạp chí về chủ đề: What are you doing at the weekend?

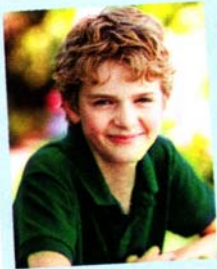
1 Read this page from 4Teen magazine.

ADIA: (Yobe, Nigeria)
Birthday 15/5
On Saturday I'm helping my parents in the field as usual. Then on Sunday we're singing at our village's choir club. It's so exciting!

VINH: (Da Nang, Viet Nam)
Birthday 7/12
I'm going to my English club this Saturday. Then on Sunday I'm going to Han River with my parents to watch the international firework competition. You can watch it live on TV.

JOHN: (Cambridge, England)
Birthday 26/2
This Saturday I'm doing the gardening with my mum. Then on Sunday my parents are taking me to London to see the greyhound racing. It's my birthday present!

TOM: (New York, US) Birthday 19/1



Our school is visiting a fire station in the neighbourhood this Saturday. It's a field trip for our project. We're talking to firefighters and checking out different fire trucks. On Sunday, I'm going to the movies with my friends. That's great!

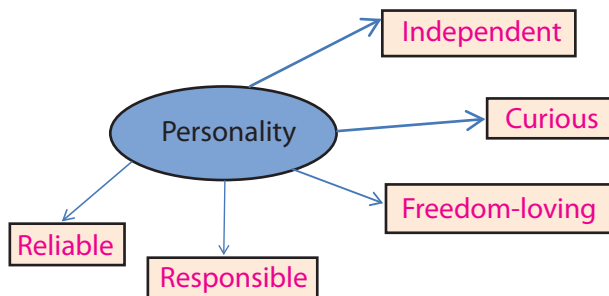


**NORIKO:
(Sakai, Japan)
Birthday 21/8**

On Saturday, I'm going to class at the Friends of Ikebana society. I'm a volunteer teacher there. Then I'm travelling to Shitennoji Temple in Osaka with my new English friends.

Bài tập 2. Find the star sign of each friend to find out about their personality.

a. Trước khi làm bài tập 2, GV cho HS suy nghĩ và tìm ra những tính từ chỉ tính cách mà mình biết, bao gồm những tính từ trong *Extra vocabulary*, và dùng thủ thuật *Guessing meaning from contextual clues* đã học ở bài trước để giải thích những từ HS chưa biết.



2 Find the star sign of each friend to find out about their personality. Do you think the description is correct?

- Aries** 21/3 – 20/4 independent, active, freedom-loving
- Taurus** 21/4 – 20/5 patient, reliable, hard-working
- Gemini** 21/5 – 20/6 talkative, curious, active
- Cancer** 21/6 – 20/7 sensitive, caring, intelligent
- Leo** 21/7 – 20/8 confident, competitive, creative
- Virgo** 21/8 – 20/9 careful, helpful, hard-working
- Libra** 21/9 – 20/10 talkative, friendly, creative
- Scorpio** 21/10 – 20/11 careful, responsible, curious
- Sagittarius** 21/11 – 20/12 independent, freedom-loving, confident
- Capricorn** 21/12 – 20/1 careful, hard-working, serious
- Aquarius** 21/1 – 20/2 friendly, independent, freedom-loving
- Pisces** 21/2 – 20/3 kind, helpful, creative



- 3 Look for your star sign. Do you agree with the description?**
- 4 Think about your friends' personalities. What star signs do you think they are? Find out if you are correct!**

Independent: Tuan is a very independent boy. He likes to do things by himself; he does not like to connect to other people.

Curious: Mai strongly wants to know about everything. She always tries to find out the answers to every question. She is a curious person.

Freedom-loving: Nobody can stop him to do what he likes. He is a very freedom-loving person.

Responsible: When Vy does a job, she spends all her time taking care of it and never blames anyone if it goes wrong. She is such a responsible girl.

Reliable: You can always trust Tu, she is very reliable.

b. GV yêu cầu HS xem mỗi người bạn thuộc chòm sao nào để tìm ra tính cách và xem những tính cách đó có đúng không bằng cách so sánh với các hoạt động ưa thích của 5 người bạn đó.

Lời dẫn:

Now please find the star signs of the five friends in 4Teen. Look at the adjectives in the star signs and compare them with what they read about the five friends in Exercise 1.

For example: Noriko belongs to Virgo, which means she is a careful, helpful and hardworking girl. And she is a volunteer teacher there. So Noriko's personality description is really correct.

Bài tập 3 (5 minutes)

Look for your star sign. Do you agree with the description?

GV cho HS tìm chòm sao của mình và xem sự miêu tả tính cách có giống mình không, nếu tính từ nào không đúng, yêu cầu HS xóa đi và bổ sung tính cách khác. Sau đó, chia sẻ với bạn bên cạnh.

Lời dẫn:

– Please look for your star sign. Let's see if the personality description is correct or not. You can tick adjectives you agree with, and cross ones you disagree with.

– After you finish, please share your thoughts with your partner.

Bài tập 4: Think about your friend's personalities.

GV cho HS hoạt động nhóm 8. Mỗi người trong nhóm sẽ nói lên tính cách của mình. 7 người còn lại sẽ nói xem bạn đó thuộc chòm sao gì.

Sau đó, GV cho các bạn thuộc cùng một chòm sao hợp thành nhóm mới, nói về tính cách của nhóm, bổ sung thêm những tính cách không có trong miêu tả của chòm sao.

Lời dẫn:

Now I want you to work in groups of 8 to talk about your personalities. The other members will tell you what your star sign is.

After that, all that have the same star sign will regroup a new one, adding more adjectives to the list.

Kết bài (2 minutes)

Our personality is the thing that connects us with other people. So train ourselves to have good personality, so that you will be loved by everyone and become a successful person in life.

Homework (2 minutes)

– Write about your best friend (his/her appearance, qualities of a good friend that he/she has).

Trình bày bảng

Monday, May 25th , 2015

Unit 3 – My friends

Lesson 4 – Communication

I. Guessing Game

II. New words



III. Practice

1. Read about 5 friends
2. Find their star sign
3. Look for your star sign
4. Think about your friend's personalities

IV. Homework

Giáo án 5: Unit 3: My friends

LESSON 5: SKILLS 1

I. Objectives:

By the end of the lesson, students can:

- use the lexical items related to the topic 'My friends'
- read for specific and general information in texts including advertisements and e-mails about friends
- talk about different activities at an English camp

II. Procedures: Các bước tiến hành

Hoạt động 1: Warm-up (3 to 5 minutes)

Discussion

GV đưa ra 3 hình ảnh sau và hỏi học sinh xem khi nào cần dùng tới những vật này. Khi học sinh đưa ra dự đoán đúng, GV cùng HS thảo luận xem những đồ vật nào cần thiết cho việc đi cắm trại.

Lời dẫn:

- I have 3 objects here; can you tell me what they are?
- Great, it's a torch, a backpack, and the last one – hiking shoes.
- So tell me, when do we use them?
- Correct, we use them at a camp.
- Can anybody tell me more things we need when we go camping?



Hoạt động 2: Comprehension Reading (20 minutes)

1. Read the advertisement for the Superb Summer Camp and choose the best answer.

a. Trước khi bắt đầu bài đọc, GV cùng HS thảo luận những đặc điểm của một mẫu quảng cáo.

Lời dẫn:

- Before you read an advertisement, I would like you to tell me the features of advertisements.
- In order to get readers to be interested in the advertisements, how should advertisements be?
- How is the title written?
- What sort of text should be chosen?
- How about the contact?
- **Suggested answer:** The title is written briefly, clearly and placed at the top of the page.
- The outline is eye-catching.
- The contact is outlined in details.

SKILLS 1

Reading

1 Read the advertisement for the Superb Summer Camp and choose the best answer.

1. The camp is for kids aged between _____.
a. 6-9 b. 10-15 c. 18-19
2. The camp is in the _____.
a. sea b. city park c. mountains
3. The camp lasts for _____ days.
a. three b. four c. five

b. GV giới thiệu bài quảng cáo về Trại hè Superb. Cho học sinh đọc 2 phút, nhớ chi tiết càng nhiều càng tốt. Hỏi HS một số câu hỏi về nội dung bài quảng cáo:

- *The camp is for children of what age?*
- *What did you see in the pictures?*
- *Where will the camp be?*
- *What can you do at the camp?*
- *When does it happen?*

c. GV cho HS đọc lại một lần nữa, yêu cầu HS chú ý tới các chi tiết: AGE, WHERE, HOW LONG, định vị và gạch chân phần chứa thông tin đó để trả lời các câu hỏi của bài tập 1.

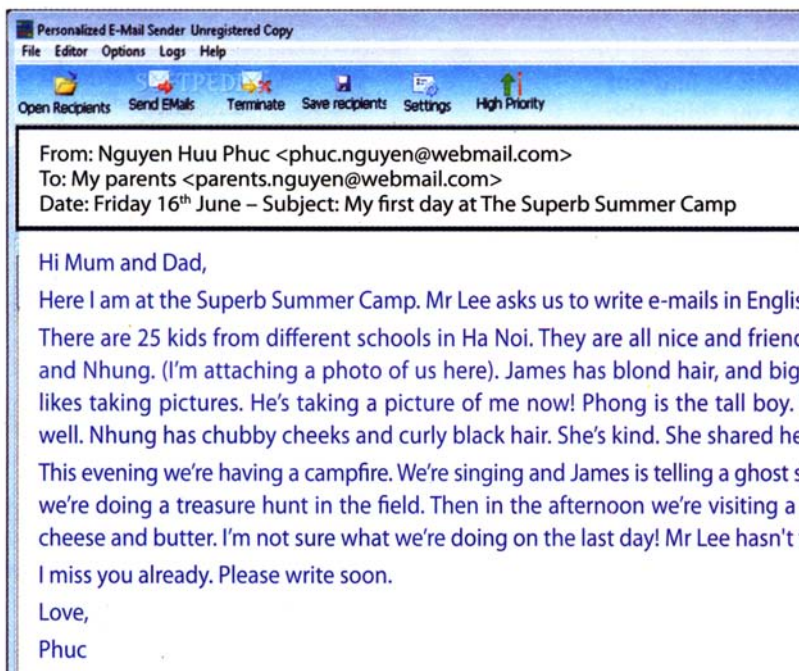
Key:

1. b 2. c 3. a

2. Read the text quickly. Then answer the questions.

2 Read the text quickly. Then answer the questions.

1. Is the text a letter, an e-mail, or a blog?
2. What is the text about?
3. Is Phuc enjoying himself?



Personalized E-Mail Sender Unregistered Copy
File Editor Options Logs Help

Open Recipients Send EMail Terminate Save recipients Settings High Priority

From: Nguyen Huu Phuc <phuc.nguyen@webmail.com>
To: My parents <parents.nguyen@webmail.com>
Date: Friday 16th June – Subject: My first day at The Superb Summer Camp

Hi Mum and Dad,
Here I am at the Superb Summer Camp. Mr Lee asks us to write e-mails in English! Wow everything here is in English!
There are 25 kids from different schools in Ha Noi. They are all nice and friendly. My new friends are Phong, James, and Nhung. (I'm attaching a photo of us here). James has blond hair, and big blue eyes. He's cool, and creative. He likes taking pictures. He's taking a picture of me now! Phong is the tall boy. He's sporty and plays basketball very well. Nhung has chubby cheeks and curly black hair. She's kind. She shared her lunch with me today.
This evening we're having a campfire. We're singing and James is telling a ghost story! I hope it isn't too scary! Tomorrow we're doing a treasure hunt in the field. Then in the afternoon we're visiting a milk farm to see how they make milk, cheese and butter. I'm not sure what we're doing on the last day! Mr Lee hasn't told us yet. I'm sure it will be fun!
I miss you already. Please write soon.
Love,
Phuc



a. Trước khi vào bài đọc GV cùng thảo luận với HS về đặc điểm và dạng thức của e-mail:

- *How many parts are there in an e-mail?*
- *Where do you put the greetings, the endings?*
- *How should you end your e-mail if you write to your parents?*
- *Is the e-mail to your parents formal or informal?*

b. Sau đó, GV giới thiệu đây là thư điện tử của một cậu bé tham gia trại hè tiếng Anh và cùng thảo luận với HS về cảm giác của cậu và nội dung cậu có thể trao đổi với bố mẹ là gì.

Lời dẫn:

– We are going to read an e-mail written by a boy who is at an English Summer Camp. How do you think the boy might feel?

– Correct, he must be very eager and excited. Besides, he also feels homesick as he misses his parents.

– So then, what do you think the boy might write to his parents?

– And now, look at this picture of his and his friends. How do you think he will talk about his friends?

(GV khuyến khích HS đưa ra câu trả lời tự nhiên, thoải mái, động viên HS sử dụng càng nhiều tính từ càng tốt).

c. Tiếp theo GV yêu cầu HS đọc 3 câu hỏi trước, và đọc e-mail trong vòng 2 đến 3 phút để tìm kiếm thông tin nhanh để trả lời câu hỏi đó.

Key:

- 1. An e-mail.
- 2. A stay at the Superb Summer Camp.
- 3. Yes, he is.

3. Read the text again, and write T or F.

GV cho HS đọc lại trong 5 phút, gạch chân những từ quan trọng trong 7 câu đã cho, định vị xem thông tin nằm ở câu nào của lá thư để làm bài cho đúng.

Lời dẫn

– Now, you have five minutes to reread the text.

– After that, underline the important key words in each statement.

– Locate where you can find information about that statement.

– Fulfill the task.

3 Read the text again and write True (T) or False (F).

- 1. Phuc is writing to his teacher. **F (his parents)**
- 2. Phuc has four new friends. _____
- 3. Phuc thinks Nhung is kind. _____
- 4. Phuc likes scary stories. _____
- 5. In the evening, the kids are playing inside. _____
- 6. They're working on a milk farm tomorrow. _____
- 7. The children can speak Vietnamese at the camp. _____

Key:

- 1. F (He's writing to his parents.)
- 2. F (He has 3.)
- 3. T
- 4. F (He hopes it isn't too scary.)
- 5. F (They're having a campfire and telling stories.)
- 6. F (They're visiting a milk farm.)
- 7. F (They speak English only.)

Hoạt động 3: Speaking (10 minutes)

4. Make your own English camp schedule

GV cho HS tự viết về lịch hoạt động của mình trong 3 ngày tại trại hè tiếng Anh, sau đó trình bày trước lớp (hoặc làm việc nhóm 4 và trình bày trong nhóm)

Speaking

4 Make your own English camp schedule.

	Morning	Afternoon
Day One		
Day Two		
Day Three		

5. Tell your partner about your schedule.

5 Take turns. Tell your partner about it. Listen and fill in the schedule.

	Morning	Afternoon
Day One		
Day Two		
Day Three		

GV cho HS làm việc đôi, quay lưng lại với nhau và nói với bạn thời gian biểu sinh hoạt của mình để bạn điền thông tin vào phiếu và ngược lại. Hai bạn sau đó có thể thảo luận để tìm ra thời gian biểu có những hoạt động hấp dẫn và hữu ích nhất.

Lời dẫn:

– Now, please work in pairs, sit back to back, and tell your partner your schedule for your partner to fill in. After that, discuss the schedule together to choose the most interesting activities.

Homework (2 minutes)

– Write an e-mail to your parents to tell them about your camp.

Trình bày bảng

Monday, May 25th , 2015

Unit 3 – My friends

Lesson 5 – Skills 1

I. Discussion

II. Reading

1. Tell your partner about your schedule.

2. Make your own English camp schedule.

3. Read the text again, and write T or F.

4. Read the text quickly, then answer the questions.

5. Read the advertisement for the Superb Summer Camp and choose the best answer.

III. Speaking

IV. Homework: Your dream school

Giáo án 6: Unit 3: My friends

LESSON 6: SKILLS 2

I. Objectives:

By the end of the lesson, students can:

- use the lexical items related to the topic 'My friends'
- listen for specific ideas about activities at a camp.
- write an entry for a magazine

II. Procedures: Các bước tiến hành

Hoạt động 1: Warm-up (3 to 5 minutes)

Chơi trò chơi 'Noughts and Crosses' (Cờ caro)

Lớp chia thành hai đội. HS gấp sách lại.

Mỗi đội chọn một con số, một hình ảnh hiện ra, HS nêu tên hoạt động đó.

Đội nào chọn được 3 hình ảnh tạo thành một đường thẳng (ngang, dọc, chéo) trước sẽ là người thắng cuộc.

Lời dẫn:

– We have learnt about how an English camp is; now we have an opportunity to know more about it by playing the game 'Noughts and Crosses'.

– Please close your books.

– The class is divided into 2 teams: Tomato and Banana.

– You choose a number, an image occurs, that is an activity at the camp, name it.

– If you name 3 images correctly which create a line first, you will be the winner.



Hoạt động 2: Listening (5 minutes)

1 What do you see in the photos? Listen and check.

GV sẽ chấp nhận những phương án linh hoạt từ câu trả lời của HS trong trò chơi trên.

Sau đó cho HS mở sách để biết tên gọi của hoạt động mà sách đưa ra.

GV cho HS chọn từ tương ứng với mỗi bức tranh và thảo luận với bạn bên cạnh.

GV cho HS nghe để kiểm tra câu trả lời của mình.

Lời dẫn:

– Now, open your book.

– Choose the words in the box to fill in the table.

– Then listen and check.

a	
b	
c	
d	
e	
f	
g	
h	
i	



2 Which activities do you think may / may not happen at the Superb Summer Camp?

GV cho HS làm việc cá nhân, lựa chọn hoạt động có và không có trong trại hè. Giải thích tại sao.

GV cho HS đọc lại đoạn quảng cáo để tìm hiểu hoạt động nào phù hợp cho trại hè.

Lời dẫn:

Please refer to the advertisement of the Superb Summer Camp to choose which activities may / may not happen at the Superb Summer Camp.

Key:

Activities that may happen at the Superb Summer Camp: a, b, d, e, f, g, i

Activities that may not happen at the Superb Summer Camp: c, h (because the camp is in Ba Vi Mountains)

3 Listen to Mr. Lee, the camp leader, talking on the phone with Phuc's parents. What are they doing on Day Two and Day Three at the camp?

a. GV cho HS suy nghĩ và tìm ra hoạt động mà ông Lee lên kế hoạch cho trại hè.

b. GV cho HS nghe lần 1 để có thông tin khái quát.

c. GV cho HS nghe lần 2 để điền vào bảng.

d. HS thảo luận với bạn mình trước khi nghe lần cuối để kiểm tra.

3 Listen to Mr Lee, the camp leader, talking on the phone with Phuc's parents. What are they doing on Day Two and Day Three at the camp?

	Morning	Afternoon
Day Two	doing a treasure hunt	visiting a milk farm and -----
Day Three	-----	-----

Key:

	Morning	Afternoon
Day Two	doing a treasure hunt	visiting a milk farm and taking part in the public speaking class
Day Three	taking part in the "Kids Cook" Contest	having a pool party

Tape script:

Phuc's parents: ...So how was the first day?

Mr Lee: It was good. Today we had a bike ride to the mountains and visited a Dao people village.

Phuc's parents: Interesting... How about tomorrow? Are you going somewhere?

Mr Lee: Oh yes, tomorrow morning we're having a treasure hunt. In the afternoon we're visiting a milk farm to see how milk and butter are made. After that we're opening the public speaking class. The kids are talking about their favourite country in the world.

Phuc's parents: That's fun! And on the third day?

Mr Lee: Oh, that's something special. There's the World Foods Festival at the camp in the morning when the kids compete for prizes. That's our "Kids Cook" Contest. They're cooking their own unique dish. And in the afternoon we're having a big party by the pool!

Phuc's parents: Really? Sounds great!

Hoạt động 3: Writing (30 minutes)

Research, draft, check

Research

Make notes and brainstorm ideas. (You can look back at the unit to help you.)

Find or draw pictures to add to your writing.

Draft

Then write your first draft.

Check

Check your draft. Can you improve it? (You can swap with a partner and suggest ways to improve it). Write it out again.

4 Write for 4Teen magazine about your plans this weekend with your friends.

Use these notes to help you.

- **Introduce yourself**
Describe yourself – think about your appearance and personality
- **Describe your friends**
Write about your friends – think about their appearance and personality
- **Describe your plans**
What do you plan to do together this week?

1. GV giới thiệu lớp sẽ viết cho kế hoạch của mình trong dịp hè gửi tới tạp chí 4Teen.

2. GV viết 3 chữ cái R – D – C lên bảng, cho học sinh biết đây là 3 bước để giúp viết tốt. Để HS đoán xem 3 bước đó là gì.

3. GV cho HS brainstorm từ vựng của 3 phần:

- *Introduce yourself*
- *Describe your friends*
- *Describe your plans*

4. GV nhắc học sinh lưu ý Chính tả, những yếu tố tạo thành một bài viết cho tạp chí: tiêu đề, phân đoạn, kết cấu...

Lời dẫn:

1. *We are going to write an entry for 4Teen Magazine*

about our plans for the weekend. You must be very excited now, right?

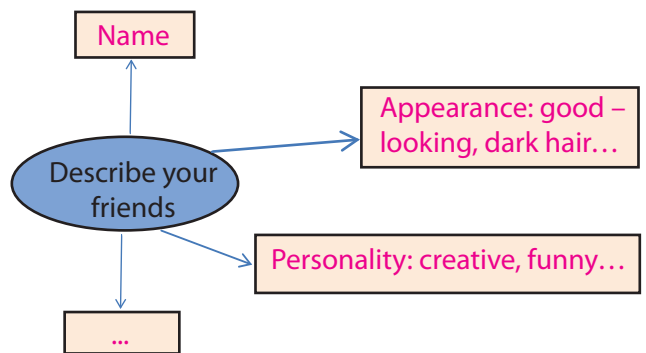
2. *Now look at this 3 letters R – D – C, these are 3 steps to help you have a good writing. Can you guess what they are?*

They are: Research which means: You make notes and brainstorm ideas (You can look back at the unit to help you). Find or draw pictures to help you.

Draft: Write your first draft.

Check: Check with your partner to improve it.

3. *To make your writing interesting, let's diversify it by using descriptive adjectives and appropriate ideas, so please brainstorm vocabulary and ideas first.*



Homework (2 minutes)

– Rewrite the entry at home.

Trình bày bảng

Monday, May 25th , 2015

Unit 3 – My friends

Lesson 6 – Skills 2

I. Noughts and crosses**II. Listening**

1. Listen and check
2. Which activities may / may not be at the camp
3. Listen to Mr. Lee about the plans

III. Writing

Write for 4Teen Magazine about your plans

Giáo án 7: Unit 3: My friends

LESSON 7: LOOKING BACK - PROJECT

I. Objectives:

By the end of the lesson, students can:

- use the lexical items related to the topic 'My friends'
- pronounce correctly the sounds /b/ and /p/ in isolation and in context
- use vocabulary and structures about body parts, appearance, and personality
- use the present continuous to talk about future plans and arrangements
- identify and practise the language of polite requests
- guess the meaning of new words based on clues including pictures and surrounding words
- read for specific and general information in texts including advertisements and e-mails
- listen for specific ideas
- write an entry for a magazine using notes

II. Procedures: Các bước tiến hành

Đây là bài tổng hợp lại toàn bộ các từ vựng, ngữ pháp, kiến thức mà HS đã được học trong 6 lessons trước đó. Vì vậy GV khuyến khích HS làm việc cá nhân để tự đánh giá xem mình đã lĩnh hội được toàn bộ kiến thức đã học hay chưa. Từ đó, cải thiện những gì HS còn chưa nắm vững.

GV động viên HS không mở lại sách hoặc vở khi làm các bài tập trong tiết học này.

Do vậy toàn bộ phần Looking back, HS sẽ làm việc cá nhân trên lớp. Nếu gặp khó khăn, HS có thể hỏi bạn bên cạnh hoặc thầy, cô giáo.

Hoạt động 1: Looking back (15 to 20 minutes)

Lời dẫn:

– We have nearly reached our destination guys, as this is our last lesson of this unit. So I would like you to work individually almost all the time to do all the exercises in Looking back part.

– If you have any difficulties, don't hesitate to ask your partner to help you. However, before doing

that, I would really like you to work your brain the hardest and try not to refer back to the 6 previous lessons. Is that OK?

– Now, time is yours. Let's finish all the exercises individually.

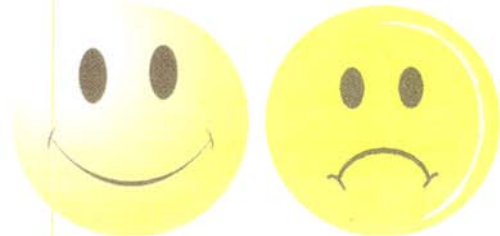
LOOKING BACK

Vocabulary

1 Write the correct words on the faces.

creative	boring	funny	confident
hard-working	kind	clever	talkative
sporty	shy	patient	serious

Can you remember more words? Add them to the faces.



2 Make your own Haiku!

"Haiku" comes from Japan.

Write a three-line Haiku poem to describe yourself. The first and last lines have five syllables. The middle line has seven syllables. The lines don't need to rhyme.

**My hair is shiny
My cheeks are round and rosy
This is me. I'm Trang!**

Swap your Haiku with two friends. Don't write your name. Let them guess.



Grammar

3 Game: Who's who?

In groups, choose a person in your group. Describe their appearance and personality. Let your friends guess.

Example:

Group: Who is it?

A: He's tall. He has glasses. He's talkative. He's creative too. He isn't shy.

B: Is it Minh?

A: Yes!/No, try again.

4 Complete the dialogue.

- A: What _____ you _____ tomorrow?
B: I _____ some friends. We _____ to Mai's birthday party. Would you like to come?
A: Oh, sorry, I can't. I _____ football.
B: No problem, how about Sunday? I _____ a film at the cinema.
A: Sounds great!

Communication

- 5 Student A looks at the schedule on this page.
Student B looks at the schedule on the next page.

Example:

- A: What are you doing tomorrow?
B: I'm playing football with my friends./I'm not doing anything.

Student A

8 a.m. - 9.30 a.m. 

10 a.m. - 11 a.m.

2 p.m. - 4 p.m. 

4 p.m. - 5 p.m. 

5 p.m.

LOOKING BACK

Vocabulary

1 Ss can check their answers with a partner before discussing the answers as a class. However, Ss should keep a record of their original answers so they can use that information in their, Now you can... statement.

2 Explain that Haiku is a traditional form of Japanese poetry. There are three lines in a Haiku: the first and the last lines have 5 syllables and the middle line has 7 syllables. The lines rarely rhyme. Read the Haiku in the textbook and ask Ss to count the syllables in each line. Then encourage Ss to create their own Haiku. Allow thinking time. Then ask Ss to work in groups of 3 to exchange their poems (without Ss' names) and guess which poem describes which person.

Grammar


3 Before starting the activity, put Ss into groups. Ask Ss to choose a member of group and write a short description of him/her. Demonstrate the activity with the class, with Ss choral reading Group & A's roles.


4 Elicit the language being practised in this activity (the present continuous for future). Ask Ss to complete the conversations individually. As in 1, Ss can share answers with a partner, but they should record their original answers to guide their self-assessment.


Key:


- A: What are you doing tomorrow?
B: I'm meeting some friends. We are going to Mai's birthday party. Would you like to come?
A: Oh, sorry, I can't. I'm playing football.
B: No problem, how about Sunday? I'm watching a film at the cinema.
A: Sounds great.


Student B

8 a.m. - 9.30 a.m. 

10 a.m. - 11 a.m. 

2 p.m. - 4 p.m. 

4 p.m. - 5 p.m. 

5 p.m. 

Finished! Now you can...	✓	✓✓	✓✓✓
• use adjectives to describe personality			
• name parts of the body			
• describe appearance and personality using forms of <i>be - have</i>			
• ask and talk about future plans			

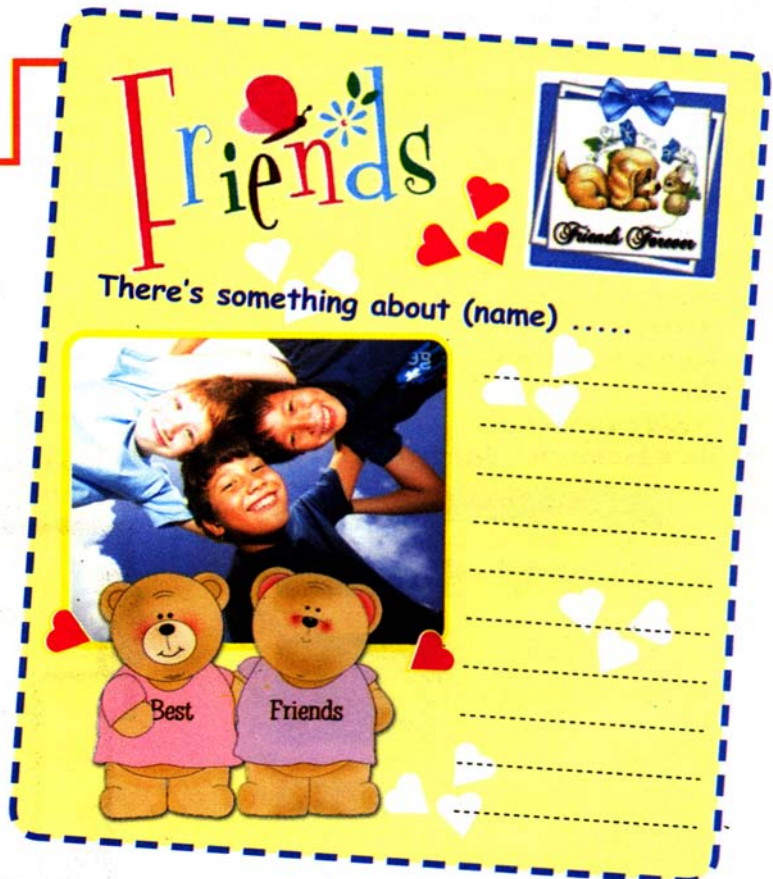
Hoạt động 2: Project (20 to 25 minutes)

PROJECT

My class yearbook

Let's make a class yearbook!

- ➔ 1. Stick a photo/drawing of the friend sitting next to you on a large sheet of paper.
- ➔ 2. Write a short description of your friend. Think about how special he/she is (appearance, personality).
- ➔ 3. Interview your friend to find out about him/her (e.g. interesting facts, hobbies, favourite subjects/teachers/books/movies, what she/he likes/hates, etc). Include these facts in your writing.
- ➔ 4. Decorate the page and bring it to class to make a class yearbook.



So với những Project của các bài khác, Project của bài này tương đối dễ do chủ đề rất gần gũi với HS, đặc biệt khi yêu cầu viết về bạn bên cạnh, người mà HS đã rất hiểu và dành thời gian nhiều bên nhau. GV có thể thực hiện các bước sau:

- Chọn vài hình ảnh trong những cuốn kỉ yếu có sẵn (trên mạng, hoặc của anh chị HS khóa trước) cho HS tham khảo.
- Hỏi HS đặc điểm của một cuốn kỉ yếu là gì.
- Cho HS tự trang trí và làm kỉ yếu về bạn bên cạnh theo các bước trong sách giáo khoa.
- Mời HS trình bày trước lớp về sản phẩm của mình.
- Cuối cùng, tập hợp lại thành một kỷ yếu chung của lớp.
- Chọn ra những trang viết có nội dung hấp dẫn, hình ảnh đẹp, sinh động nhất để cho điểm 10.



Lời dẫn:

- After a school-year being together, I am sure you want to keep beautiful memories you share with each other, and a class yearbook helps us to do that. So today, we will do it by writing about our friend next to you. Then altogether, we will have one complete yearbook which has all our class's members in.

- But first, let's look at some class yearbooks templates to see the features of them:
- How is it designed?
- How are the pictures arranged?
- What should be written?
- Then start to write about the one next to you first.

Homework (2 minutes)

GV có thể giao thêm bài tập cho HS trong sách bài tập.

Trình bày bảng

Monday, May 25th, 2015

Unit 3 – My friends

Lesson 7 – Looking back – Project

I. Looking back

1. Vocabulary

2. Grammar

II. Project: My class yearbook

III. Homework

Giáo án 1: Unit 4: My neighbourhood

LESSON 1: GETTING STARTED

Lost in the old town!

Thời gian: 45 phút

I. Objectives:

By the end of the lesson, students can:

- use lexical items related to the topic 'My neighbourhood'
- make suggestions
- ask for and show directions to somewhere

II. Procedures: Các bước tiến hành

Hoạt động 1: Warm-up (5 minutes)

Để dẫn dắt học sinh vào nội dung bài học, giáo viên có thể lựa chọn các phương án sau để cho học sinh hoạt động:

Phương án 1: Chơi trò chơi 'Bingo'

– How are you today? Do you feel well enough to continue the next unit?

– Well, I'd like to give you a game to see whether you are ready or not.

– Each of you has to write down 5 places in your town. Then watch and listen to this video clip. If you have the same words, cross them out. The first person crossing out all 5 things shouts "Bingo" and wins the game. Are you ready? Start now!

(Link: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=LULzOE11VYk>)

– Well done, I see that many of you are very good at vocabulary. So, are these places near your house?

– Right, I hear that some say 'yes' and some say 'no'. And who can give me another word for places around you or around a particular place?

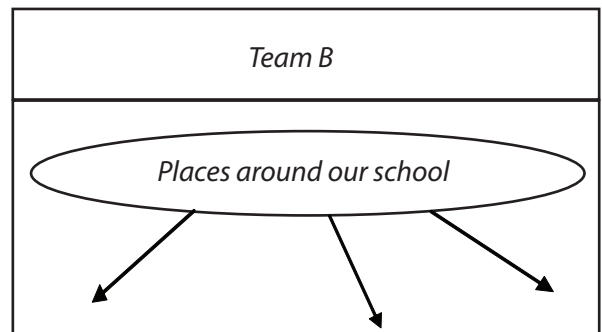
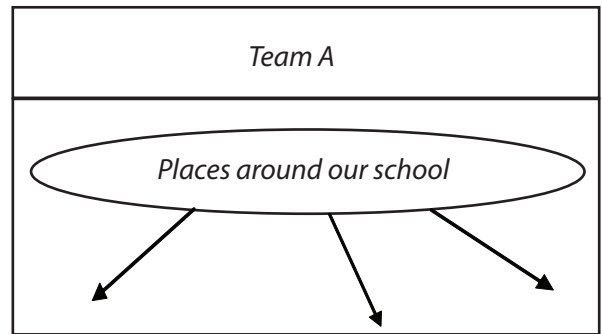
– Right! I agree with you. That's 'neighbourhood'. That's also the topic of Unit 4, "My neighbourhood".

Phương án 2: Chơi trò chơi "Brainstorming"

– How are you today? Do you feel well enough to continue the next unit?

– Well, I'd like to give you a game to see whether you are ready or not.

– Look at this: "Places around our school". One member from each team, in turn, moves to the board and writes any word concerning the topic given.



– In 2 minutes, the team with more correct answers will be the winner. Now are you ready? Start!

– ... Well done! Your vocabulary is so good. And who can give me another word for places around us or around a particular place?

– Right! I agree with you. That's 'neighbourhood'. That's also the topic of Unit 4, "My neighbourhood".

Phương án 3: Chơi trò chơi 'Hangman/ Shark attack'

NEIGHBOURHOOD

(13 letters)

Hoạt động 2: Elicit the dialogue (9 minutes)

– Now, let's have a look at this picture. They are Nick, Khang and Phong.



– Can you guess where they are? (Look at the houses behind, the colourful lanterns in the window ...)

– Look at Phong. He has a map. Do you think they live here? What's the matter with them?

(Ss' possible answers: They're looking for the way to somewhere/ They're getting lost)

– Right, in fact, they're getting lost.

• GV viết lên bảng nhan đề đoạn hội thoại "Lost in the old town!"

• GV chốt lại với HS nghĩa của tính từ 'lost'.

– 'lost' means "unable to find your way; not knowing where you are" and we can use it with the verbs 'be' and 'get'.

– So what really might be happening to the three boys, Nick, Khang and Phong? Read the statements and guess the order of the actions:

Read and put the actions in order.

1. The girl gives directions.
2. Nick, Khang and Phong arrive in Hoi An.
3. Nick, Khang and Phong decide to go to Tan Ky House.
4. Nick, Khang and Phong get lost.
5. Phong looks at the map.
6. Nick, Khang and Phong walk quickly to Tan Ky House.

– Now listen to the dialogue and check your predictions, right?

• GV cho HS nghe hội thoại một lần, sau đó để HS đọc nhẩm lại bài một lượt và kiểm tra phần dự đoán ban đầu.

Phong: Wow! We're in Hoi An. I'm so excited!

Nick: Me too.

Khang: Yes. It's so historic!

Phong: So, where shall we go first?

Nick: Let's go to 'Chua Cau'.

Phong: Well, the map says Tan Ky House is nearer. Shall we go there first?

Nick & Khang: OK, sure.

Phong: Shall we go by bicycle?

Nick: No, let's walk there.

Phong: Hmm, OK. First cross the road, turn right and then go straight.

Nick: OK, let's go.

Phong: Wait.

Khang: What's up, Phong?

Phong: Where are we now? I think we're lost!

Nick: Oh no! Look, there's a girl. Let's ask her.

Phong: Excuse me? We're lost! Can you tell us the way to Tan Ky House?

Girl: Tan Ky House? Keep straight, then turn right. But it's quicker to turn right here, then turn left.

Phong: Thank you so much.

Girl: My pleasure.

Phong: Nick, let's hurry.

• GV chốt lại đáp án đúng: 2 – 5 – 3 – 4 – 1 – 6

• GV gọi một cặp HS đọc lại đoạn hội thoại trước lớp để kiểm tra và sửa lỗi phát âm nếu cần.

Hoạt động 3: Practise making suggestions (7 minutes)

– As you know, the three boys are in Hoi An and they are discussing where to go first. What do they say exactly? Let's do Exercise 1b.

b Making suggestions.

Put the words in the correct order.

1. a. we/shall/go/Where/first/?
b. to 'Chua Cau'/go/Let's/.
2. a. we/Shall/go/there/first/?
b. sure/OK,/.
3. a. by bicycle/we/Shall/go/?
b. let's walk/No,/there/.

Key:

1. a. Where shall we go first?
b. Let's go to 'Chua Cau'.

2. a. Shall we go there first?

b. OK, sure.

3. a. Shall we go by bicycle?

b. No, let's walk there.

– What structure do they use? (Shall we ...? Let's ...)

– When do we use these structures? (To make suggestions)

– Do we say 'Shall we going ...?' and 'Let's going ...'? (No, we use an infinitive without 'to' after 'Shall we ...?' and 'Let's ...')

– Right, now work in pairs to role-play making suggestions, please!

– ... Who can practise your dialogue?

– Very good. Thank you so much!

Hoạt động 4: Teach vocabulary (9 minutes)

– What places are the boys going to visit during their trip in Hoi An?

– Well, I'm going to give you a list of places in the neighbourhood.

1. statue (n) (visual)
2. railway station (n) (visual)
3. memorial (n) (visual)
4. temple (n) (example)
5. square (n) (situation)
6. cathedral (n) (visual)
7. art gallery (n) (definition)
8. palace (n) (explanation)

– Checking technique: Matching (Exercise 3)

3 Match the places below with the pictures. Then listen, check and repeat the words.

A. statue

B. railway station

C. memorial

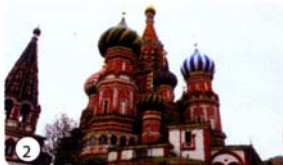
D. temple

E. square

F. cathedral

G. art gallery

H. palace



Key:

1E – 2H – 3F – 4C – 5G – 6A – 7B – 8D

– Now think about where you live. Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about your neighbourhood, using the words in Exercise 3.

4 Think about where you live. Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about it.

Example:

A: Is there a theatre in your neighbourhood?

B: Yes, there is./No, there isn't.

Hoạt động 5: Practise asking for and giving directions (11 minutes)

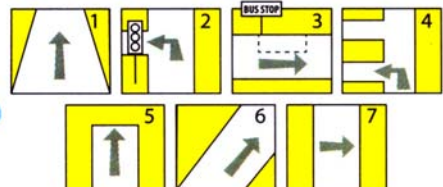
– You may know the places in your neighbourhood quite well, but when you go to a new town or a new city or even a new country, it's necessary to know how to ask for and give directions to somewhere.

– Look at Exercise 5. There are some instructions to give directions. Match the instructions in the box with the pictures, please.

5 Match the instructions in the box with the pictures.

DIRECTIONS:

- Turn left at the traffic lights.
- Go along the street.
- Go straight on.
- Go to the end of the road.
- Take the first turning on the left.
- Go past the bus stop.
- Cross the street.



Key:

1. Go straight on.
2. Turn left at the traffic lights.
3. Go past the bus stop.
4. Take the first turning on the left./ Take the first left.
5. Go to the end of the road.
6. Go along the street.
7. Cross the street.

• Nếu HS chưa nắm vững kiến thức, GV có thể giải thích nghĩa các lời chỉ dẫn bằng Tiếng Việt.

• GV có thể kiểm tra lại cách dùng các lời chỉ dẫn này bằng cách dán các hình vẽ tương ứng với các chỉ dẫn lên bảng và cho HS 2 đội chơi trò "Slap the Board" trước khi làm bài luyện tiếp theo.

– Are you sure you can use all these instructions quite well now?

– Well, I would like you to check yourselves by playing 'Guessing Game'. That's Exercise 6 in your book.

6 Game

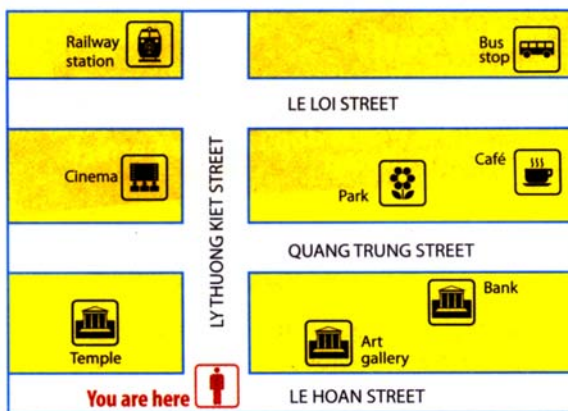
Work in pairs. Give your partner directions to one of the places on the map, and they try to guess. Then swap.

Example:

A: Go straight. Take the second turning on the left. It's on your right.

B: Is that the art gallery?

A: Yes, it is. /No, try again.



– Now who can practise with me first? Look at the map and listen to me, then tell me what place I show you to go to. Ready?

...

Kết bài (2 minutes)

– You have done a lot of activities today. Now, can you remember what you have learnt today?

– Minh, please!

– Yes, you are right, through the lesson you can now know how to make suggestions, you can improve your vocabulary on the topic "My neighbourhood" and you can also know the way to ask for and give directions.

– I think that's enough for today and here's your homework.

Homework (2 minutes)

1. Learn the vocabulary.
2. Learn the structure to make suggestions.
3. Learn the instructions used to give directions and practise Exercise 6, p. 39, Students Book with your partner.
4. Prepare for the next lesson.

Trình bày bảng

Unit 4 – My neighbourhood

Lesson 1 – Getting started – Lost in the old town!

I. Bingo

II. Listen and read

1. Model Sentences: Making suggestions

A: Where **shall we go** first?

B: **Let's go** to 'Chua Cau'.

2. Vocabulary

- statue (n)
- railway station (n)
- memorial (n)
- temple (n)
- square (n)
- cathedral (n)
- art gallery (n)
- palace (n)

3. Model sentences: Asking for and giving directions

III. Homework

Giáo án 2: Unit 4: My neighbourhood

LESSON 2: A CLOSER LOOK 1

I. Objectives:

By the end of the lesson, students can:

- use words to describe a neighbourhood
- pronounce correctly the sounds /i/ and /i:/ in isolation and in context

II. Procedures: Các bước tiến hành

Hoạt động 1: Warm-up (5 minutes)

Phương án 1: Chơi trò chơi 'Word Competition'

- GV chia lớp thành hai đội.
- GV viết chữ 'NEIGHBOURHOOD' lên bảng và yêu cầu với thời gian hai phút, thành viên mỗi đội truyền phần viết thật nhanh lên bảng tất cả các tính từ bắt đầu bằng các chữ cái có trong từ 'NEIGHBOURHOOD'.

– *What do you wish when taking part in a competition, class?*

– *Yes, you may wish to be the winner. And here's a chance for you to try to be the winner.*

– *First of all, tell me again, 'What is the topic of Unit 4?'*

– *Okay, that's 'NEIGHBOURHOOD'. Now I would like you to list all the adjectives beginning with one of the letters in the word 'NEIGHBOURHOOD'. The members of each team, in 2 minutes, take turns to write on the board as many adjectives as you can. The team with more correct answers will be the winner.*

– *Are you ready? Start now!*

– Possible answers:

noisy, narrow, new, near, nice, natural ...

expensive, exciting, excellent, empty, evil, easy, eager, early, ...

ideal, idle, important, intelligent, interesting, ...

good, green, gentle, giant, generous, golden, glad, grey, ...

hot, horrible, high, hilly, happy, heavy, helpful, huge, ...

bad, boring, better, big, black, blue, blonde, bully, ...

old, oval, open, own, outgoing, obvious, optimistic, ...

right, rainy, regular, relaxed, red, ready, ...

dark, dirty, dry, dangerous, ...

– *Now we have a lot of different adjectives. Tell me, 'When do we use these adjectives?'*

– *Well, we use them to describe someone or something. And for our lesson, "My neighbourhood", can we use all these adjectives to talk about our neighbourhood?*

– *Oh, yes, we can only use some of them and in our lesson today, I'll give you more adjectives to describe your neighbourhood.*

Phương án 2: Chơi trò chơi 'Pelmanism'

– *Do you think you have a good memory?*

– *Well, if you have a good memory, show it to everyone. Let's play the game 'Pelmanism'.*

– *We have two teams, A and B. There are twelve cards of adjectives opposite in meaning on the board. The members of each team take turns to choose the two cards. Turn the cards over and see if they match. If not, turn the cards over again and ask the next team. Continue playing until all the cards are matched pairs. Each team scores one point for each pair taken. And of course, the team with most points is the winner!*

good	big	new
bad	small	old

beautiful	clean	cheap
ugly	dirty	expensive

– *Tell me, when do we use these adjectives?*

– *Well, we use them to describe someone or something. And in our lesson today, I'll give you more adjectives to talk about your neighbourhood.*

Hoạt động 2: Vocabulary used to describe a neighbourhood

a. Teach new words: Exercise 1, p. 40, Student's Book

New words:

1. narrow (adj): (visual)
2. historic (adj): (situation)
3. fantastic (adj): (synonym)
4. convenient (adj): (explanation)
5. boring (adj): (antonym)
6. noisy (adj): (antonym)
7. polluted (adj): (situation)

– Checking technique: Gap-filling

1 Fill in each blank with one word from the box. Listen, check and repeat the words.

narrow historic fantastic
convenient boring noisy polluted

1. Cua Lo is a **fantastic** beach!



2. I love it here - everything I want is only five minutes away. It's so _____.

3. Life in the countryside is _____. There aren't many things to do there.



4. The air in the area is _____ with smoke from factories.

5. Hoi An is a _____ city with a lot of old houses, shops, buildings and theatres, etc.



6. The street is very _____ with a lot of traffic so we can't move fast.

7. Now, there are many new shops near here so the streets are busy and _____ during the day.



– Well, do the exercise individually, then compare the answers in pairs.

– ... Have you finished? Now listen, check and repeat the words.

Key:

2. convenient 3. boring 4. polluted
5. historic 6. narrow 7. noisy

b. Practice: Exercise 2&3, p. 40, Student's Book

– Well, can you remember the meaning of all the adjectives in Exercise 1? Do you want to improve your vocabulary? Let's read the information from "Watch out" box.

Watch out!

Sometimes words can have two or more opposites: noisy – quiet/peaceful. Sometimes words don't have a perfect opposite: polluted

– Now let's do Exercise 2.

2 Now match the adjectives from the box in 1 with their opposites below.

exciting peaceful modern
inconvenient wide quiet terrible

Example: narrow – wide

– Answer the questions individually first, please. Then I'll ask some of you to read the answers aloud and we'll check together.

Key:

- boring – exciting
noisy – quiet/ peaceful
historic – modern
convenient – inconvenient
fantastic – terrible

– Do you understand the meaning of these opposites in Vietnamese? I would like to check some of you. All right?

– ...

– You already know a number of adjectives, now it's time for you to use them to talk about your neighbourhood. Let's do Exercise 3.

3 Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about your neighbourhood. Use the words in **1** and **2** to help you.

Example:

A: Is our neighbourhood polluted?

B: No, it isn't.

A: Is it peaceful?

B: Yes, it is.

– Who can practise with me first?

– Well, now do the same with your partner.

Hoạt động 3: Pronunciation of /i/ and /i:/ sounds (18 minutes)

GV cho HS xem clip về quy tắc phát âm 2 âm, sau đó cho HS luyện tập các bài tập 4, 5, 6 – trang 40 – SGK.

Đường link: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=4NQw2_jx-rg



OXFORD
online english

One Minute English
Today's Topic:
/i/ and /i:/



4 Listen and repeat the words. Pay attention to the sounds /i:/ and /i/.

exciting cheap historic sleepy expensive
convenient peaceful police noisy friendly

Now, in pairs put the words in the correct column.

/i:/	/i/
Example: cheap	historic

Key:

/i:/ cheap – sleepy – peaceful – convenient – police

/i/ historic – exciting – expensive – noisy – friendly

5 Listen to the sentences and circle the words you hear.

- Tommy is living/leaving there.
- Shall we hit/heat the oil first?
- This airplane sits/seats 100 people.
- There's a ship/sheep over there.
- Jimmy is finding some tins/teens now.
- Peter bought a mill/meal last week.
- Some Tims/teams are coming in.
- It is a fish and chip/cheap shop.

Key:

- | | | |
|-----------|---------|----------|
| 1. living | 2. heat | 3. seats |
| 4. sheep | 5. tins | 6. mill |
| 7. teams | 8. chip | |

6 Listen and practise the chant. Notice the sounds /i:/ and /i/.

MY NEIGHBOURHOOD

My city is very busy.
There are lots of buildings growing.
The people here are funny.
It's a lovely place to live in.

My village is very pretty.
There are lots of places to see.
The people here are friendly.
It's a fantastic place to be.

Homework (2 minutes)

- Learn the vocabulary by heart.
- Do Exercise A1, 2 – B1 (p. 26, 27 – Workbook)
- Prepare for the next lesson.

Trình bày bảng

Unit 4 – My neighbourhood

Lesson 2 – A closer look 1

I. Word competition

II. Vocabulary used to describe a neighbourhood

- narrow (adj): (visual)
- historic (adj): (situation)
- fantastic (adj): (synonym)
- convenient (adj): (explanation)
- boring (adj): (antonym)
- noisy (adj): (antonym)
- polluted (adj): (situation)

III. Pronunciation of /i/ and /i:/ sounds

IV. Homework

Giáo án 3: Unit 4: My neighbourhood

LESSON 3: A CLOSER LOOK 2

I. Objectives:

By the end of the lesson, students can use the comparative adjectives to make comparisons.

II. Procedures: Các bước tiến hành

Hoạt động 1: Warm-up (5 minutes)

Phương án 1: Chơi trò chơi 'Face to face'

- GV chia lớp thành 4 đội.
- GV khơi gợi HS nhớ tới nhân vật hoạt hình Tom & Jerry và yêu cầu HS nói về sự khác biệt giữa hai nhân vật này. (GV có thể dùng tranh minh họa cho bài học thêm sinh động).
- Thành viên của mỗi đội, khi tới lượt của đội mình, sẽ đứng lên nói một điểm khác biệt mà mình đã tìm ra. Tới lượt đội nào không có đáp án thì sẽ bị loại và đội cuối cùng còn lại sẽ là đội thắng cuộc.
- Với trình độ khác nhau và ý tưởng khác nhau, HS có thể có những cách diễn đạt khác nhau. GV chấp nhận tất cả các phương án đúng của các em. Ví dụ:

Tom is big/ heavy but Jerry isn't./ Tom is bigger/ heavier than Jerry.



- Are you interested in watching cartoons? Do you think they are interesting?
- Look at the picture. Can you know who they are?
- Absolutely right. They are Tom and Jerry.
- Do you think they are quite different from each other?

– OK. Now I divide our class into 4 teams. Take turns to show a difference you can find. If you can't give the correct answer, you won't have the chance to continue the game. The last team will be the winner of our game. Are you ready? Start!

...

– Do you say that Tom is bigger than Jerry? What does 'bigger' mean?

– That's correct! And we'll continue to learn more about the comparative adjectives in our lesson today.

Phương án 2: Chơi trò chơi 'Kim's Game'

– We have two teams as usual.

– Look at the pictures in 20 seconds.

– I'll give each team a poster. In 2 minutes, write sentences to show the differences you can find out from the pictures.

– The team with more correct answers will be the winner.



Hà Nội: 38°C
Đà Nẵng: 35°C



• Với trình độ khác nhau và ý tưởng khác nhau, HS có thể có những cách diễn đạt khác nhau. GV chấp nhận tất cả các phương án đúng của các em. Ví dụ:

The elephant is big but the mouse is small./ The elephant is big but the mouse isn't./ The elephant is bigger/ heavier/ stronger than the mouse.

• Với lớp học có đa số HS đã biết về cách sử dụng cấp so sánh cao hơn của tính từ, GV sẽ lấy luôn một câu của các em để dẫn vào bài. Ví dụ:

– Look at this picture: The elephant is bigger than the mouse.

– What does 'bigger' mean?

– That's correct! And we'll continue to learn more about the comparative adjectives in our lesson today.

Hoạt động 2: Rules of Comparative Adjectives (7 – 10 minutes)


– Look at the box in your book. Can you see different rules to form comparative adjectives?

	Positive	Comparative	Rule
one syllable	fast	faster	+ er
	large	larger	+ r
two syllables	noisy	noisier	y → ier
	modern	more modern	more + adj
three or more syllables	expensive	more expensive	more + adj

than
'than' is used to make comparisons:

– What does 'syllable' mean?

– How can we identify the number of syllables in an English word? Read the Learning Tip in your book, please!



Learning Tip!
Some words are one syllable, some are two, and some are more. Try clapping once for each syllable:
hot (1 syllable)
busy (2 syllables)
beautiful (3 syllables)

– Now, listen and tell me how many syllables there are in each word: tall, busy, expensive, boring, narrow, polluted, ...

– Look at the table again, tell me the rules for adjectives with one syllable,

... two syllables

... and three or more syllables

– OK, and now we'll have some practice.

Hoạt động 3: Practice (25 – 27 minutes)

Exercise 1 & 2 – p. 41 – Student's Book

Exercise 1: GV cho HS làm việc cá nhân về cấp so sánh với tính từ ngắn.

1 Complete the following sentences with the comparative form of the adjectives in brackets.

1. Ann is **slimmer** than Laura. (slim)



2. This building is _____ than that building. (tall)



3. The square in Ha Noi is _____ than the square in Hoi An. (big)

4. My neighbourhood is _____ than your neighbourhood. (noisy)



5. The Green Hotel is _____ than the Palace Hotel. (cheap)

Learning Tip!
Some words are one syllable, some are two, and some are more. Try clapping once for each syllable:
hot (1 syllable)
busy (2 syllables)
beautiful (3 syllables)

Key:

1. **slimmer** 2. **taller** 3. **bigger**
4. **noisier** 5. **cheaper**

Exercise 2: GV cho HS làm việc cá nhân về cấp so sánh với tính từ dài.

2 Now complete the following sentences with the comparative form of the long adjectives in brackets.

1. This house is **more modern** than that house. (modern)



2. This park is _____ than that park. (beautiful)



3. Living in a house is _____ than living in a flat. (convenient)



4. Living in a city is _____ than living in the countryside. (interesting)



5. Things in this shop are _____ than things in the supermarket. (expensive)

Key:

- 1. more modern 2. more beautiful
- 3. more convenient 4. more interesting
- 5. more expensive

Exercise 3, 4, 5 – p. 42 – Student’s Book

GV cho HS làm việc cá nhân về cấp so sánh hơn của cả tính từ ngắn và tính từ dài.



3 Read and complete Vy’s letter to her friend.

Dear Nick,

How are you?

Ha Noi is beautiful! But it is too busy and polluted for me. I’m at Cua Lo Beach now. I’m having a great time. The weather is (0. hot) **hotter** and (1. dry) _____ than that in Ha Noi. The houses are (2. small) _____ and the buildings are (3. old) _____ than the buildings in Ha Noi. The streets are (4. wide) _____ with less traffic. I love the food here. The seafood here is (5. delicious) _____ and (6. cheap) _____ than the seafood in Ha Noi.

Well, outside the sun is shining so I’m off to get some fresh air.

See you soon,

Vy

Key:

- 1. drier 2. smaller 3. older
- 4. wider 5. more delicious 6. cheaper

4 Look at the pictures of Yen Binh neighbourhood and Long Son neighbourhood. Now write about the differences.

Example: Yen Binh is more crowded than Long Son.



Student’s answers

5 Complete the following sentences with the comparative form of the adjectives in brackets.

- 1. Is Ho Chi Minh City **bigger** than Ha Noi? (big)
- 2. Is a house in the city _____ than a house in the countryside? (expensive)
- 3. Is a sofa _____ than a chair? (comfortable)
- 4. Is Hoi An _____ than Hue? (historic)
- 5. Are your streets _____ than ours? (narrow)

Key:

- 1. bigger 2. more expensive
- 3. more comfortable 4. more historic
- 5. narrower

Exercise 6 & 7 – p. 42 – Student’s Book

GV cho HS làm việc theo cặp.

– Now you already know how to use comparative adjectives.

– Let’s do Exercise 6 in pairs to talk about the differences between Yen Binh and Long Son neighbourhoods.

– Do Exercise 7 in pairs to talk about the places you have been to, using the comparative form of adjectives in the box.

6 Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about Yen Binh neighbourhood and Long Son neighbourhood using the pictures in 4.

Example:

- A: Is Yen Binh more crowded than Long Son?
- B: Yes, it is.
- A: Is Long Son more modern than Yen Binh?
- B: No, it isn’t.

7 Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about the places that you know. Use the comparative form of the adjectives in the box.

beautiful	boring	exciting	friendly
small	hot	wet	convenient

Example:

A: Is Hue busier than Da Nang?

B: No, it isn't.

Homework (2 minutes)

1. Study Box of Comparative Adjectives & Learning Tip (p. 41, Student's Book) again.
2. Do Exercise B3, 4, 5, 6, 7 – p.27, 28, 29 – Workbook.
2. Prepare for the next lesson.

Trình bày bảng

Unit 4 – My neighbourhood

Lesson 3 – A closer look 2

I. Face to face

II. Grammar: Comparative Adjectives

1. One syllable: faster, larger
2. Two syllables: noisier, more modern
3. Three or more syllables: more expensive

III. Practice

Exercise 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 (p. 41, 42)

IV. Further Practice

Exercise 6, 7 (p. 42)

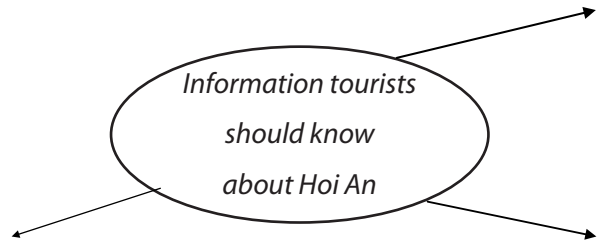
V. Homework

Giáo án 4: Unit 4: My neighbourhood

LESSON 4: COMMUNICATION

I. Objectives:

By the end of the lesson, students can use the suitable vocabulary and structures to create an audio guide for their city.



II. Procedures: Các bước tiến hành

Hoạt động 1: Warm-up (5 minutes)

Brainstorming


Today, we are going to listen to an audio guide to Hoi An. What do you know about Hoi An? List any ideas or information you can remember about it.

Hoạt động 2: Audio guide to Hoi An (10 minutes)

– Nick is in Hoi An and he also wants some information about Hoi An. He is listening to an audio guide. Listen and check your information, please.

COMMUNICATION

City Tours!

 Nick is listening to an audio guide to Hoi An. Listen and fill in the gaps.



Extra vocabulary

First
Then

After that
Finally

Welcome to Hoi An! Hoi An is famous for its (1) _____ buildings, shops, pagodas and houses. They're older than in other cities in Viet Nam. The streets are very narrow so it is more (2) _____ to walk there.

OK. Let's start our tour! First, go to Quan Cong Temple. To get there, walk (3) _____ for 5 minutes. The temple is on your left. (4) _____ go to the Museum of Sa Huynh Culture. Take the second (5) _____. Turn right and it's on your (6) _____. Then, have lunch at Café 96. Its 'cao lau' and 'banh vac' are very good. Turn left and take the (7) _____ turning on your right. Finally, go to Hoa Nhap Workshop to buy presents for your friends. Turn left, then turn right. The workshop is (8) _____ Tan Ky House.

– Do you have the same ideas? ...

– Now listen for the second time and fill in the gaps.

Key:

1. historic 2. convenient 3. straight 4. Second

5. left 6. right 7. second 8. next to

– Before listening for the last time, I would like you to read aloud all the extra vocabulary.

– Okay, now listen again and pay attention to the use of these words.

– ... Please answer my question, when do we use these words?

– Well, we call them connective words or sequencing words. And we can use them to give directions or instructions.

Hoạt động 3: Audio guide for your city (25 - 28 minutes)

2 Choose one of the cities below. Create an audio guide for your city.

Remember to:

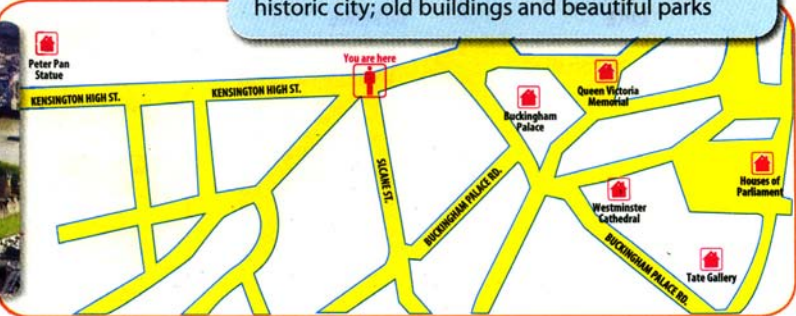
- include some comparisons with other cities;
- give directions to different places; and
- link your instructions using *first, then, after that* and *finally*.



Ho Chi Minh City: City Fact File
 Ho Chi Minh City: the largest city in the south Viet Nam; historic city; busy streets with a lot of motorbikes; many beautiful places and restaurants



London: City Fact File
 London: capital city of England; on the river Thames; historic city; old buildings and beautiful parks



3 Present your guide to your class.

- Now choose one of the cities given in your textbook. Imagine you are an experienced tourist guide. Make your own audio guide for your city.

- Look at the requests in your book and tell me:

+ What does your audio guide include? (some comparisons with other cities)

How can you get information about your city? (from the textbook)

+ Do you have to give directions to some places in your city? (Yes)

Look at the map. Can you list some places of interest in each city?

(In Ho Chi Minh City: Duc Ba Cathedral, Sai Gon Opera House, Hoi An Restaurant, ...)

(In London: Peter Pan Statue, Buckingham Palace, Queen Victoria Memorial, ...)

Do you learn how to give directions to somewhere? (Yes)

In which lesson? (Lesson 1, Getting Started, Exercise 5, p. 39)

What connective words can you use to make instructions or directions? (first, then, after that, finally)

– Good, I'm sure that all of you know what to do now. So prepare your audio guide, please.

...

– Have you finished? Now present your audio guide in groups of 4.

– And finally, I would like some of you to present in front of the class. Others listen and give your comments, please.

– Thank you so much. I think many of you have very good and interesting introduction about your city. I give ... mark 10 and ... mark 9 for your very excellent guide!

Homework (2 minutes)

1. Write-it-up: Write your audio guide in the notebook.

2. Prepare for the next lesson.

Trình bày bảng

Unit 4 – My neighbourhood

Lesson 3 – Communication

I. Brainstorming

II. Audio guide to Hoi An

Connective words: first – then – after that – finally

III. Audio guide to Ho Chi Minh City/ London

IV. Homework

Giáo án 5: Unit 4: My neighbourhood

LESSON 5: SKILLS 1

I. Objectives:

By the end of the lesson, students can:

- read for specific information about good things and bad things in a neighbourhood
- talk about different places and show directions to these in a neighbourhood

II. Procedures: Các bước tiến hành

Hoạt động 1: Warm-up (5 minutes)

Phương án 1: Chơi trò chơi 'Wordsquare'

GV phát phiếu học tập có ô chữ cho từng HS. HS làm bài cá nhân.

GV gọi một số HS nộp bài chấm điểm và chữa cho cả lớp.

B	F	R	I	E	N	D	L	Y
R	E	N	H	O	T	O	A	N
L	C	A	B	U	I	O	R	O
U	R	R	U	A	N	G	G	I
F	O	R	S	T	F	X	E	S
E	W	O	Y	I	I	K	B	Y
C	D	W	I	D	N	F	P	Q
A	E	C	Y	Y	E	V	U	Z
E	D	M	O	D	E	R	N	L
P	O	L	L	U	T	E	D	J

– Find as many adjectives as you can from this wordsquare.

Possible answers:

↘ beautiful

↓ busy, crowded, noisy, narrow, large, tidy

→ friendly, modern, polluted, hot

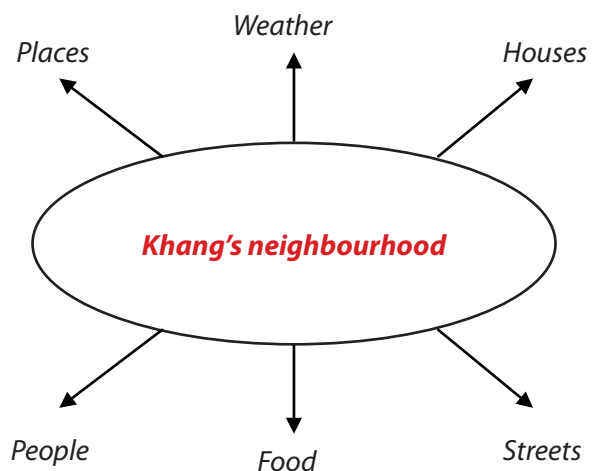
↑ peaceful, good

– These are adjectives and who can tell me again, when do you use adjectives? (When we describe about someone or something)

– You are going to read Khang's blog in which he writes about his neighbourhood. Which adjectives does he use to describe his neighbourhood? Let's find more in our reading passage.

Phương án 2: Network

– Look at this picture. This is Khang's neighbourhood. Can you guess where he lives? Give your predictions please.



– OK. And what his neighbourhood is really like, let's find more in our reading passage.

Hoạt động 2: Reading skill (20 - 23 minutes)

a. Guess the meaning of the words from the context.

– Now open your books and read Khang's blog.

KHANG'S BLOG
Welcome to my world!

HOME PAGE ABOUT PHOTOS LINKS

Friday, December 23,

MY NEIGHBOURHOOD

I'm back home now. Hoi An was great! My neighbourhood's very different. It's in the suburbs of Da Nang City. There are many things I like about it.

It's great for outdoor activities because it has beautiful parks, sandy beaches, and fine weather. There's almost everything I need here: shops, restaurants, and markets. Every house has a backyard and a frontyard. The people here are incredibly friendly. They're friendlier than those in many other places! And the food's very good.

However, there is one thing I dislike about it. Now, there are many modern buildings and offices so the streets are busy and crowded during the day.

Can anyone write about what you like and don't like about your neighbourhood?

Posted by Khang at 4:55 PM

– First, scan the passage, underline or highlight these words, then guess their meaning.

1 Find these words in Khang's blog. What do they mean?

suburbs

backyard

dislike

incredibly

beaches

GV giúp HS có kỹ năng đoán nghĩa từ ngữ cảnh của câu bằng cách đưa ra các câu hỏi gợi ý.

Với các HS còn yếu về từ vựng, GV giải thích nghĩa bằng Tiếng Anh và cho các em ghi nghĩa Tiếng Việt.

Ví dụ:

+ Who can read the sentence containing the word 'suburb'? (It's in the suburbs of Da Nang City)

+ Is 'suburb' inside or outside the city? (It's outside the city)

+ Is it the countryside? (No, it isn't)

+ Why? (Because we cannot say 'the countryside of a city')

+ So what does it mean? (It means an area which is away from the centre of a town or a city – ngoại ô, ngoại thành)

• Suggested ideas:

backyard (n) = the yard behind the house

dislike (v) # like (v)

incredibly (adv) = extremely, very

beach (n) = an area of sand at the edge of the sea

b. Answer the questions.

– You already know the new vocabulary and I believe you can understand the text better now. Read Khang's blog again and find the answers to these questions. Remember to note where you find the information that helps you give the answers.

– Answer the questions individually first, then compare in pairs and I'll check with you after that.

1. Where is Khang's neighbourhood?
2. Why is his neighbourhood great for outdoor activities?
3. What are the people there like?
4. Why are the streets busy and crowded?

1. It is in the suburbs of Da Nang City.
2. Because it has beautiful parks and sandy beaches and fine weather.
3. They are very friendly.
4. Because there are many modern buildings and offices in the city.

c. Summarize

– In his blog, Khang says there are many things he likes about his neighbourhood and there is only one thing he dislikes about it. Can you remember?

– Do Exercise 3 in your book, please. Remember to check the answers with your partner, then check with the whole class.

4 Look at the map of Khang’s neighbourhood. In pairs, ask and answer questions about how to get to the places on the map.

Example:

- A:** Excuse me. Can you tell me the way to the beach?
B: Yes. First, go straight. Then turn right. After that go straight again. It’s in front of you.
A: Thank you very much.



3 Read Khang’s blog again and fill in the table with the information.

LIKE	DISLIKE
- It’s great for outdoor activities.	

- Who volunteers to practise with me first?
- OK, I am the tourist and you are the person who lives in that neighbourhood.
- ...
- Have you finished? An and Linh, can you practise your dialogue?
- Now, remember about the places around your house and practise asking and answering questions about how to get to those places.
- Who can help me read the request of Exercise 5 in your book, please?
- ...
- Phong and Minh, present your dialogue, please. The other ones, listen and give your comments while listening, okay?

Like	Dislike
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – It’s great for outdoor activities. – There’s almost everything here. – Most houses have a backyard and a front-yard. – People are incredibly friendly. – The food is good. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – The streets are busy, crowded during the day...

Homework (2 minutes)

1. Practise reading the text again to remember the main ideas.
2. Do Exercise C1, 2 & D1, 2, 3 (p. 29, 30, 31 – Workbook)
3. Prepare for the Project (p. 47 – Textbook): What is your ideal neighbourhood?

Hoạt động 3: Speaking (15 - 18 minutes)

a. Ask for and give directions to places in Khang’s neighbourhood

– You can know about Khang’s neighbourhood very well now. Do Exercise 4 in your book, please.

Trình bày bảng

Unit 4 – My neighbourhood

Lesson 5 – Skills 1

I. Wordsquare: Crazy House Hotel

II. Reading

1. New words

- suburb (n)
- backyard (n)
- dislike (v)

- incredibly (adv)

- beach (n)

2. Comprehension Question

3. Summary

III. Speaking: Ask for and give directions to places in the neighbourhood

Giáo án 6: Unit 4: My neighbourhood

LESSON 6: SKILLS 2

I. Objectives:

By the end of the lesson, students can:

- listen for specific ideas
- write about what they like and dislike about their neighbourhood

II. Procedures: Các bước tiến hành

Hoạt động 1: Warm-up (5 minutes)







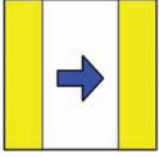

Phương án 1: Chơi trò chơi 'Lucky numbers'

- In the previous lesson, you already practised asking for and giving directions. Is that right?
- Now, let's play 'Lucky numbers' to check how good you are at giving directions.
- You are divided into 2 teams. The members of each team take turns to choose the number from 1 to 8. If you get a Lucky Number, you'll get one point without having to give the answer. If you get a picture, look at it carefully and give the suitable instruction.

– Are you ready? Start now!

...

– OK. In our lesson today, you'll also listen to a conversation in which people ask for and give directions. Let's begin our lesson now.

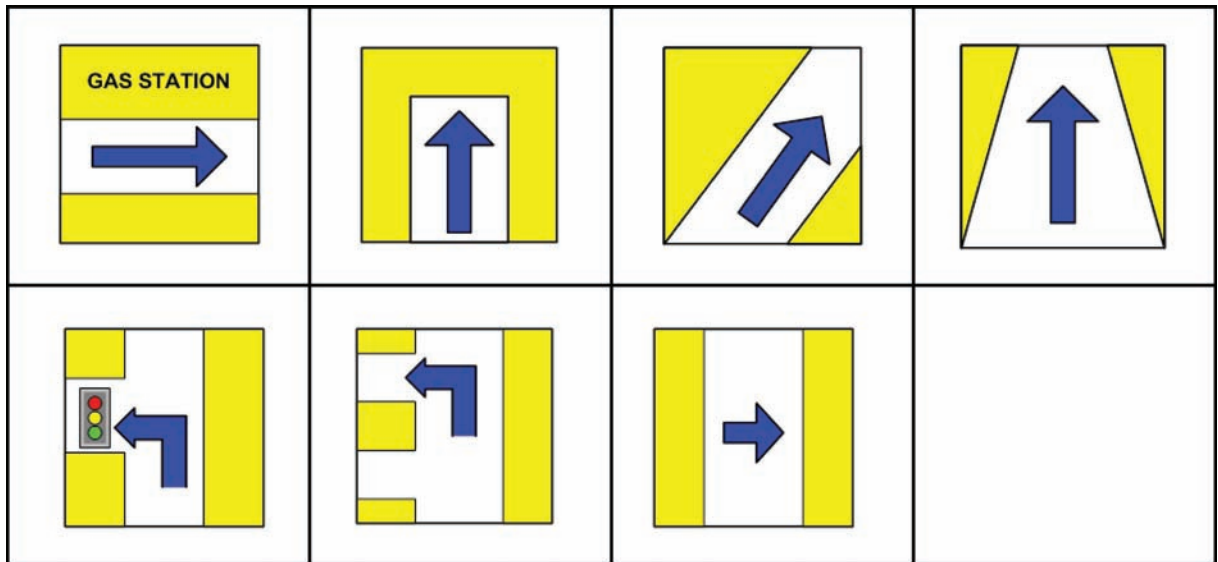
 <p>Go straight on.</p>	 <p>Turn left at the traffic lights.</p>	 <p>Go past the gas station.</p>	 <p>Take the second turning on the left./ Take the second left.</p>
 <p>Go to the end of the road.</p>	 <p>Go along the street.</p>	 <p>Cross the street.</p>	

Phương án 2: Chơi trò chơi 'Slap the board'

- In the previous lesson, you already practised asking for and giving directions. Is that right?
- Now, let's play 'Slap the board' to check how good you are at giving directions.
- 6 members from each team will come here and stand in two lines in front of the board.

– I'm going to read aloud some instructions. Listen carefully and slap the correct picture (stuck on the board) as quickly as possible. Of course, the team with more correct answers will be the winner.

– Are you ready? Start now.



– OK. In our lesson today, you'll also listen to a conversation in which people ask for and give directions. Let's begin our lesson now.

Hoạt động 2: Listening skill (12 - 15 minutes)

– Before listening, have a look at Study skills first.
 – I would like one of you to read the instructions aloud. The whole class listen carefully and try to remember, please.

Study skills – Listening
 Before listening:
 - read the questions carefully
 - decide what information you are listening for
 - think of some words that you might hear
 - listen for important information only

– Now, apply all these tips to doing the Listening exercises below.

a. Gap-filling exercise

1 Listen to the conversation between a stranger and Duy's dad. Fill in the blanks with the words you hear.

- A: Excuse me. Where is the supermarket?
- B: Go to (1) _____ of this street. It's on your (2) _____.
- A: And where is the (3) _____?
- B: It's in (4) _____. Take the (5) _____, and it's on your left.

– Do you read the request of the exercise carefully?

– What are you going to listen? (a conversation between a stranger and Duy's dad)

– Can you predict what words can be put in each blank? (for number 1, it may be 'Go to the end of this street'; for number 2, we can put the word 'right' or 'left'; etc.)

– Now, listen and fill in the blanks. Remember to listen for important information only.

– Do you need the second time of listening?

– Let's check the answers.

1. the end
2. right
3. lower secondary school
4. Le Duan Street
5. second right

b. Matching exercise

– Tell me again what you have to do before listening.

– Well, in order to make your listening task easier, study the map carefully.

– Work in pairs to discuss how to get to the places numbered 1 – 4 from the 'You are here' point.

– Before writing, I'd like to ask whether you remember the Study Skills for writing you already studied in Unit 3. (Research, Draft, & Check)

– For the 'Research' activity, what do you need to prepare? (Ideas and language)

+ Where can you get the ideas? (From Exercise 4)

+ Where can you study necessary language? (From Khang's blog about his neighbourhood)

+ What useful expressions can you study from his blog?

There are many things I like about it.

It's great for ...

There's almost everything I need here: ...

However, there is one thing I dislike about it.

...

– I'm so satisfied with all your good answers. Now follow all the steps of writing and start your writing, please.

Homework (2 minutes)

1. Finish your writing in the notebook (if you don't have enough time in class).
2. Do Exercise E1, 2 – p. 31, 32 – Workbook.
3. Finish your project.

Trình bày bảng

Unit 4 – My neighbourhood

Lesson 6 – Skills 2

I. Lucky numbers

II. Listening

1. Gap-filling
2. Matching

III. Writing

The things you like and dislike about living in your neighbourhood.

IV. Homework

Giáo án 7: Unit 4: My neighbourhood

LESSON 7: LOOKING BACK - PROJECT

I. Objectives:

By the end of the lesson, students can:

- use the lexical items related to the topic “My neighbourhood”
- use adjectives to describe places
- talk about different places and show directions to these in a neighbourhood

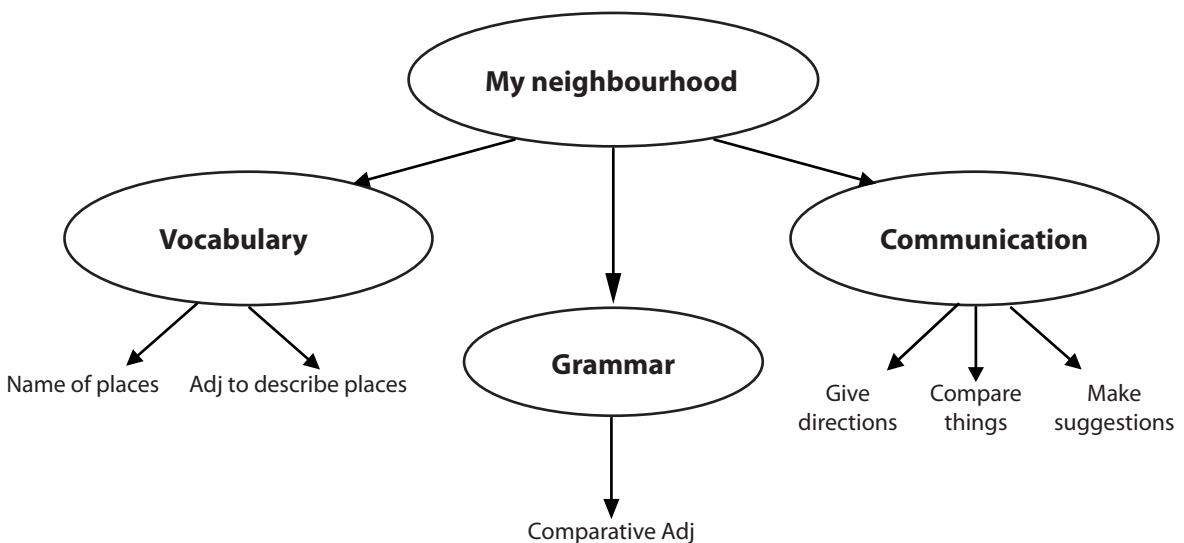
II. Procedures: Các bước tiến hành

- GV khuyến khích HS làm việc cá nhân, hoàn thành các bài tập trong SGK ngay trên lớp để tự đánh giá xem mình đã lĩnh hội được toàn bộ kiến thức đã học hay chưa, từ đó cải thiện những phần HS chưa nắm vững.
- GV động viên HS không mở lại sách hoặc vở khi làm các bài tập trong tiết học này.

Hoạt động 1: Network/ Mind map (5 minutes)

– Before doing the exercise, I would like you to have a look back at all the lessons you have already studied in this unit.

– Draw a mind map into your notebook, so that you can remember everything more clearly, dear!



Hoạt động 2: Practice (15 to 20 minutes)

– Try to finish all the exercises in your book individually, then compare in pairs before I check in front of the class, right?

– Try as hard as you can to remember all the things presented in this unit and don't refer back to the 6 previous lessons. If you have any difficulties while doing your exercises, don't hesitate to ask me or your partner. All right?

LOOKING BACK

Vocabulary

1 Write the correct word for each picture.



1. _____

2. _____



3. _____

4. _____



5. _____

6. _____

2 Fill each gap with a suitable adjective.

- The town has many motorbikes. It's very _____.
- The streets aren't wide, they're _____.
- The buildings are _____. They were built 200 years ago.
- The new market is _____ for me because it's a long walk from my house.
- Things at the corner shops are _____ than those at the supermarket.

Grammar

3 Put the following adjectives in the correct column.

fast happy noisy quiet
exciting heavy difficult large
convenient hot expensive polluted

One syllable	Two syllables	Three or more syllables

4 Now write their comparative form in the table below.

Adjectives	Comparative form
fast	faster
convenient
noisy
difficult
heavy
expensive
happy
hot
polluted
exciting
large
quiet

5 Complete the sentences comparing the pictures. Use comparative form of the adjectives below.

noisy beautiful convenient
expensive modern

1. This street is _____ that one.



2. A city house is _____ a country house.

3. Going by car is _____ going by bicycle in this area.



4. This building is _____ that one.



5. Things in this shop are _____ things in that shop.



Communication

6 Match the questions with the correct answers.

- Excuse me! Is there a post office near here?
- It's in Quang Trung Street, opposite the park.
- Yes, there's one at the corner of the street.
- Is Ha Noi more exciting than Vinh City?
- Yes, it is.
- What shall we do this evening?
- Let's stay at home and watch TV.
- Where is the cinema?

7 Role-play the questions and answers.

Finished! Now you can	✓	✓✓	✓✓✓
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> name places give directions use adjectives to describe places compare things 			

Key:

1. Vocabulary

1.1 Exercise 1 (p. 46)

- | | |
|-------------|--------------------|
| 1. statue | 2. railway station |
| 3. park | 4. temple |
| 5. memorial | 6. cathedral |

1.2 Exercise 2 (p. 46)

- | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. noisy | 2. narrow |
| 3. historic | 4. inconvenient |
| 5. cheaper/ more expensive | |

2. Grammar

2.1 Exercise 3 (p. 46)

One syllable	Two syllables	Three syllables
fast	happy	exciting
hot	noisy	expensive
large	quiet	convenient
	heavy	polluted
		difficult

2.2 Exercise 4 (p. 46)

Adjectives	Comparative form
fast	faster
convenient	more convenient
noisy	noisier
difficult	more difficult
heavy	heavier
expensive	more expensive
happy	happier
hot	hotter
polluted	more polluted
exciting	more exciting
large	larger
quiet	quieter

2.3 Exercise 5 (p. 46)

- noisier than
- more modern than
- more convenient than
- more beautiful than
- more expensive than

3. Communication

3.1 Exercise 6 (p. 47)

a-c d-e f-g h-b

3.2 Exercise 7 (p. 47)

Students' presentation

4. Self-assessment

– I see that you're working very hard today. Now check how much you have gained from this unit, so that I can help you improve your English.

– Finish your self-assessment box and then tell me your result, please! Which part are you best at? Which one do you want to improve? ...

Hoạt động 3: Project (20 to 25 minutes)

GV mời một số nhóm trình bày Project "What is your ideal neighbourhood?". Các nhóm còn lại lắng nghe, nhận xét về những ưu điểm và những mặt còn hạn chế của nhóm bạn. GV đưa lời nhận xét cuối cùng, chú ý động viên những nhóm có tinh thần cộng tác cao, kết hợp ăn ý, diễn đạt trôi chảy, có ý tưởng tốt và minh họa phong phú.

– To continue with the topic “My neighbourhood” in this unit, it’s time for you to give your opinions about an ideal neighbourhood. Which group volunteers to present first?

– So, the other groups, pay attention to your friends’ presentation and don’t forget to give your comments after that.

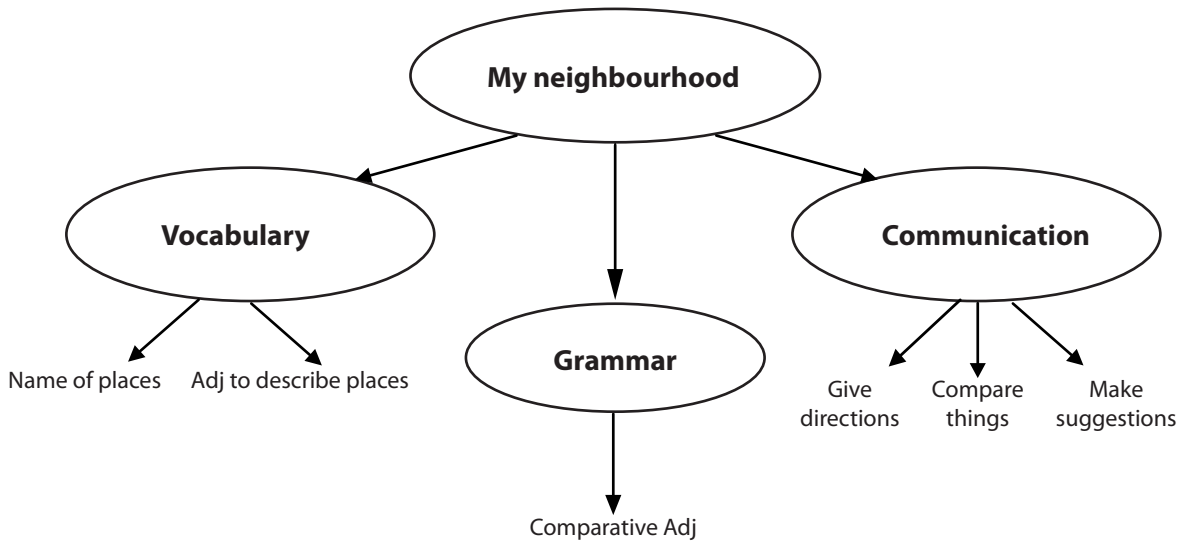
Homework (2 minutes)

1. Share your project with the other groups. Study your friends’ project.
2. Prepare for the next lesson.

Trình bày bảng

Unit 4 – My Neighbourhood
Lesson 7 – Looking back & Project

I. Revision: Network



II. Practice

III. Project: “Your ideal neighbourhood”

Giáo án 1: Unit 5: Natural Wonders of the World

LESSON 1: GETTING STARTED

Geography Club

Thời gian: 45 phút

I. Objectives:

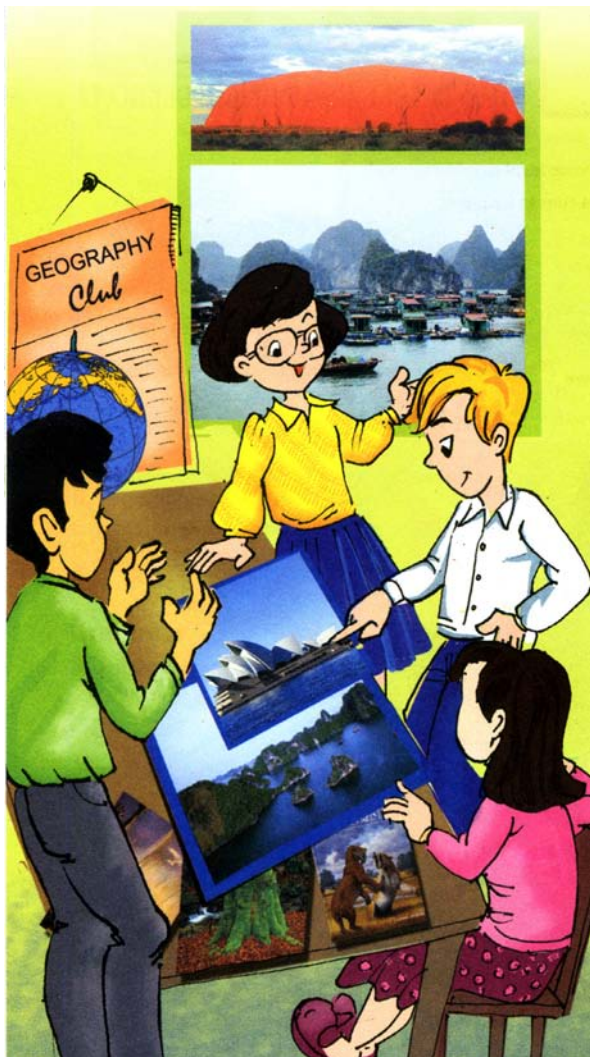
By the end of the lesson, students can:

- use the lexical items related to 'things in nature'
- call out names of natural features
- use fixed expressions for classroom situations and other circumstances as well

II. Procedures: Các bước tiến hành

Hoạt động 1: Warm-up (3 to 5 minutes)

Phương án 1: Describe the places in the pictures



Luật chơi:

- GV sử dụng chính bức hình trong bài để hỏi HS về những địa danh đó.

Lời dẫn:

– Look at these pictures please, can you tell me:

– What can you see in this picture?

– Where is it?

– Do you know this place?

– Have you ever been to this place before?

Answers:

1. Ayres Rock in Australia
2. Ha Long Bay in Viet Nam
3. Opera House in Sydney

Lời dẫn:

– Today, we will have a chance to learn about natural wonders of the world, a very interesting topic.

Phương án 2: Chơi trò chơi 'Who knows more?'

Luật chơi:

- GV chia bảng thành hai phần, hai đội chơi lên viết các danh lam thắng cảnh của Việt Nam trong vòng một phút.

- Mỗi bạn chỉ viết một địa danh và chuyển phần cho bạn khác trong đội.

- Đội nào viết nhiều hơn đội đó thắng cuộc.

Lời dẫn:

– Viet Nam is a very beautiful country. It has become one of the most attractive destinations for tourists.

– Please now, write down the names of tourist attractions as many as possible. Each person writes one place only.

– Who writes more is the winner.



Hoạt động 2: Elicit the dialogue (15 minutes)



1 Listen and read.

Vy: Hello, welcome to Geography Club. *(Knock at door)*

Mai: Sorry! Can I come in? I went to the wrong room.

Vy: No problem, we are just starting now. Today I'm going to introduce some natural wonders of the world to you.

Nick: Great! What's that in the first picture? It looks incredible.

Mai: Yes! Is it a red mountain?

Vy: Well, that's Ayres Rock. It's in the middle of Australia. Local people call it Uluru.

Nick: Can you spell that, please?

Vy: Sure, it's U-L-U-R-U.

Nick: Thank you.

Vy: It's not the highest mountain in Australia, but it's the most beautiful! Its colour changes at different times of the day. People think it's best in the evening when it is red.

Phuc: I want to visit Ayres Rock one day.

Nick: Picture 2 is Ha Long Bay, isn't it?

Vy: Well done Nick, that's right. What else do you know?

Nick: It's in Viet Nam, of course! Ha ha.

Vy: Yes, it is! There are many islands there. This picture shows Tuan Chau. It's one of the largest islands.

Phuc: How about picture 3 ...

Lời dẫn:

- Everyone, look at this picture now; where do you think they can be?
- True, they can be in the class; they can be in a club.
- What are they doing?
- Correct, they are talking about some natural wonders in Viet Nam and in the world.

GV cho HS nghe 2 lần sau đó làm bài tập 1a. HS làm việc cá nhân, sau đó thảo luận với bạn bên cạnh.

Bài tập 1a

a Answer the following questions.

1. Who is the leader of Geography Club?
2. Why is Mai late?
3. What is the other name for Ayres Rock?
4. Which country would Phuc like to visit?
5. What is Tuan Chau?

Lời dẫn:

– So you have listened to the dialogue, let's see if you can understand it well by answering the following questions.

– I would like you to do individually then you can discuss with your partner next to you.

Key:

1. Vy is
2. She went to the wrong room.
3. Uluru
4. Australia
5. An island

Bài tập 1b

b Put the words in the correct order.

1. spell/you/that/please/can
2. repeat/you/that/please/can
3. come/I/can/in

Lời dẫn:

– Let's do some more study on the dialogue, is it OK?

– What does Nick say when he wants to know how to spell Uluru?

– Yes, correct 'Can you spell that, please?'

– True, and remember to raise your tune up when asking this question. (GV đưa tay lên cao khi giảng điều này)

– And what do we say when we don't hear clearly what others say?

– Correct, 'Can you repeat that, please?'

– And what does Mai say when she enters the room?

– She says: 'Can I come in?'

(GV cho HS nhắc lại mẫu câu đúng ngữ điệu, lưu ý học sinh viết đúng chính tả)

Bài tập 1c

GV cho HS xem ví dụ và gọi 2 đôi HS lên dựng lại đoạn hội thoại.

GV cho HS brainstorm những tình huống sử dụng 3 mẫu câu trên (chú trọng 2 mẫu câu đầu).

Với lớp khá, GV cho HS mở rộng đoạn hội thoại.

GV cho HS làm việc đôi.

c Brainstorm situations when people use these sentences. Then role-play the situations with a partner.

Example:

You may need to spell your name when you order take-away pizza by phone.

A: Hi, can I order a cheese and meat pizza, please?

B: Sure. What's your name, please?

A: It's Nick.

B: Can you spell that, please?

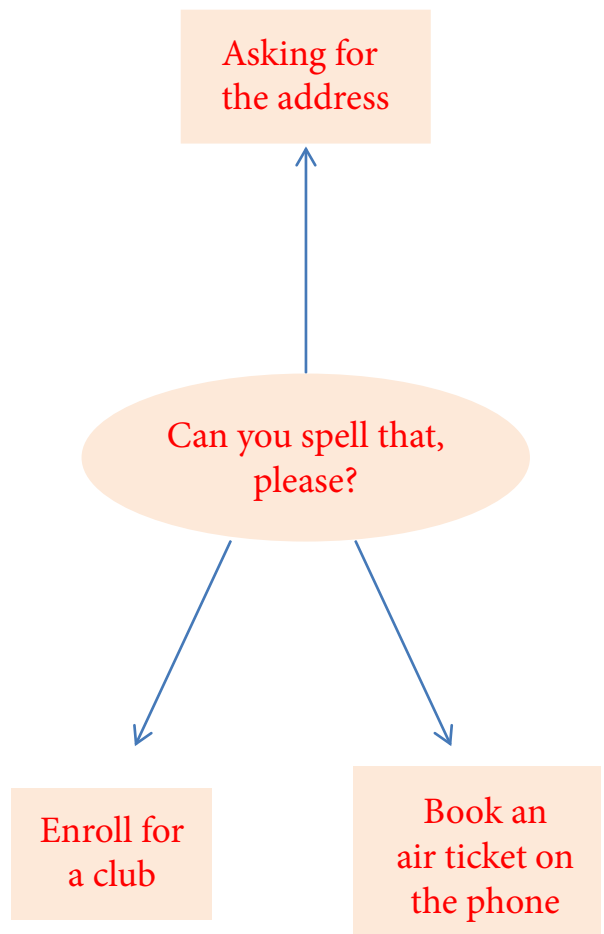
A: Yes, it's N-I-C-K.

Lời dẫn:

– First, please brainstorm ideas for where this might be said.

– After that, work in pairs to make a conversation using these sentences.

Suggested answers:



Bài tập 2

(Bài tập này chủ yếu luyện phát âm đúng cho HS, vậy GV cho HS nghe và nhắc lại).

2 Listen and repeat the following words.

- | | | | | |
|-------------|----------|--------------|-----------|------------|
| 1. mountain | 2. river | 3. waterfall | 4. forest | 5. cave |
| 6. desert | 7. lake | 8. beach | 9. island | 10. valley |

Bài tập 3

GV yêu cầu HS viết đúng tên địa danh dưới mỗi bức tranh.

- | | | | | |
|-------------|----------|--------------|-----------|------------|
| 1. mountain | 2. river | 3. waterfall | 4. forest | 5. cave |
| 6. desert | 7. lake | 8. beach | 9. island | 10. valley |

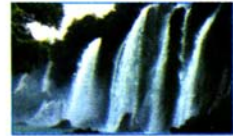
3 Now label the pictures.



1. _____



2. _____



3. _____



4. _____



5. _____



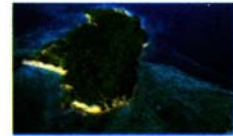
6. _____



7. _____



8. _____



9. _____



10. _____

4 Read the conversation in **1** again. Tick the words in **2** you can find.

Bài tập 4

GV cho HS đọc lại bài hội thoại và đánh dấu vào những từ đã được dùng.

Role-play

Nếu còn thời gian, GV có thể cho HS luyện tập thêm với hoạt động này. HS làm việc đôi, một bạn đóng vai người nước ngoài hỏi xin thông tin tới một địa danh ở Việt Nam (HS sử dụng hình ảnh và từ vựng của bài 2 và 3), một bạn đưa ra thông tin tư vấn. Trong hội thoại, khuyến khích học sinh sử dụng các mẫu câu của phần 1b.

Lời dẫn:

– Now please work in pairs.

– One is a foreign tourist; the other is a Vietnamese student. The tourist wants to visit a place of interest in Viet Nam. The student consults him. Try to use the sentences in 1b.

– You can use pictures and vocabulary in 2,3 as some suggestions.

Suggested answers:

Tourist: Hi, I really love mountains. Can you tell me where I should visit?

Student: You can go to Sapa Mountain.

T: Sapa? Can you spell that please?

S: Yes, it's S-A-P-A.

T: Sapa, do I say it correctly? Can you repeat that, please?

S: Sapa, Sapa, it's Sapa Mountain – one of the most beautiful mountains in Viet Nam.

T: Thanks a lot, I will certainly go there.

Homework (2 minutes)

– Rewrite the dialogue at home.

Trình bày bảng

Monday, May 25th, 2015

Unit 5 – Natural wonders of the world

Lesson 1 – Getting started – Geography Club

I. Who knows more?

II. Listen and read

1a. Answer the questions

1b. Put the words in the correct order

CAN YOU SPELL THAT, PLEASE?

CAN YOU REPEAT THAT, PLEASE?

CAN I COME IN?

1c. Brainstorm situations

2. Listen and repeat

3. Label the pictures

4. Tick the words

5. Role-play

III. Homework

Giáo án 2: Unit 5: Natural Wonders of the World

LESSON 2: A CLOSER LOOK 1

I. Objectives:

By the end of the lesson, students can:

- use the lexical items related to the topic 'travel items' and things in nature
- pronounce correctly the sounds /t/ and /st/ in isolation and in context

II. Procedures: Các bước tiến hành

Hoạt động 1: Warm-up (3 to 5 minutes)

Chơi trò chơi 'Brainstorming'

Luật chơi:

- GV viết 3 từ DESERT, BEACH và MOUNTAIN lên bảng, yêu cầu HS lên viết TÍNH TỪ MIÊU TẢ những nơi đó, và VẬT DỤNG CẦN THIẾT khi tới nơi đó du lịch.

Lời dẫn:

– Today, you seem to be very happy. Let's work your brain to make you happier, is it OK?

– Now, there are 3 places that people like to go on a vacation, namely DESERT, BEACH, MOUNTAIN.

– Please brainstorm all the adjectives to describe those places and the things you need to bring when traveling there.

Lời dẫn:

– OK, boys and girls, time's up. It's time to show how rich your vocabulary is.

– With 'DESERT', we have DRY, HOT, SANDY, WATER, BACKPACK, COMPASS, TENT, BOOTS...

– With 'BEACH', we have WINDY, COOL, FRESH, SUNNY, SANDY, SWIMMING SUIT, SUNGLASSES, and SUN CREAM...

– With 'MOUNTAIN', we have FRESH, PURE, WINDY, GREEN, HIKING SHOES, BACKPACK, GLOVES, ROPE...

Hoạt động 2: VOCABULARY (5 minutes)

1. Match the items with the pictures.

Lời dẫn:

– Everyone, you have shown me that your vocabulary is quite rich, but now, let's make it even richer by learning some more new words, alright?

– Let's match the items with the pictures and practise saying the following items.

plaster	scissors
walking boots	sleeping bag
painkillers	backpack
sun cream	compass

1. _____

2. _____

3. _____

4. _____

5. _____

6. _____

7. _____

8. _____

Key:

- | | | | |
|-----------------|------------------|-------------|--------------|
| 1. painkillers | 2. scissors | 3. plaster | 4. sun cream |
| 5. sleeping bag | 6. walking boots | 7. backpack | 8. compass |

GV cho HS luyện phát âm, sau đó kiểm tra bằng hành động:

Ví dụ: *scissors* dùng 2 ngón tay làm hành động cắt, *walking boots* làm hành động đi lại, *plaster* làm hành động dán, *sun cream* làm hành động thoa kem....để HS nhắc lại từ đó.

2. Complete the following sentences.

2 Complete the following sentences.

1. We're lost. Pass me the _____.
2. It's so hot today. I need to take some _____.
3. My head hurts. I need to take a _____.
4. I finished packing. All my things are in my _____.
5. I walked too much. I need to put a _____ on my foot.

GV cho HS làm việc cá nhân và trao đổi lại với bạn bên cạnh.

3 Now put the items in order. Number 1 is the most useful on holiday. Number 8 is the least useful.

- | | |
|----------|----------|
| 1. _____ | 5. _____ |
| 2. _____ | 6. _____ |
| 3. _____ | 7. _____ |
| 4. _____ | 8. _____ |

GV cho HS làm việc đôi, thảo luận đồ dùng quan trọng, hữu ích theo thứ tự từ 1 đến 8 khi đi biển du lịch.

Sau đó 3 đôi kết hợp lại thành nhóm 6 đưa ra phương án tối ưu nhất.

GV gọi đại diện các nhóm lên trình bày và đưa ra lý do cho sự lựa chọn của nhóm mình.

Với các nhóm hoàn thành sớm, GV tiếp tục đưa ra yêu cầu như trên với chuyến đi núi và rừng.

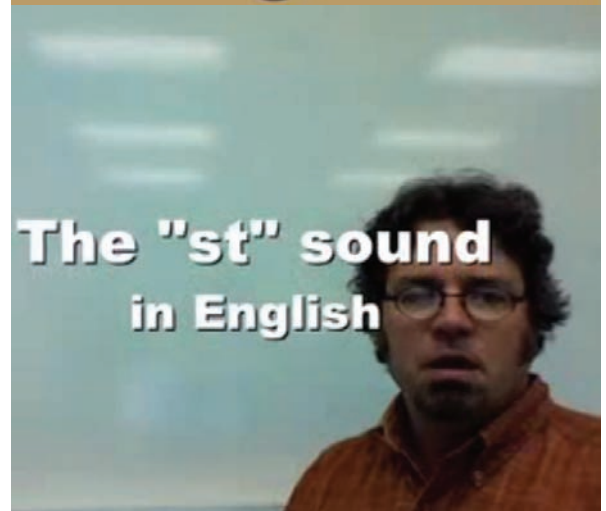
Lời dẫn:

– *Work in pairs please, put the items in order. Number 1 is the most useful on beach holiday. Number 8 is the least useful.*

– *After that, groups with 2 pairs to discuss the best choice.*

Pronunciation of /t/ and /st/ sounds

GV cho HS xem clip về cách phát âm của hai âm, sau đó cho HS luyện tập phát âm sao cho chính xác bằng bài 4, 5 và 6.



Pronunciation

/t/ and /st/

4 Listen and number the words you hear.

desert	boot
plaster	lost
forest	boat
coast	best (1)

5 Listen again and repeat the words.

Bài tập 6.

GV chia lớp thành 2 đội: Đội âm /t/ và đội âm /st/.
GV bật đĩa từng câu, đội nào thấy có âm của đội mình thì nhắc lại câu đó.



6 Listen and repeat. Pay attention to the bold-typed parts of the words.

1. Swimming in the sea in summer is **best**.
2. Ha Long Bay has the **nice**st scenery in Viet Nam.
3. The Amazon rainfore**st** is in Brazil.
4. One day, I **want** to see Ayres Rock.
5. The Sahara is the **hott**est desert in the world.
6. I want to explore the **co**ast by **bo**at.

Nếu còn thời gian, GV có thể cho HS chơi thêm một hoạt động:

Make sentences with your sounds

Đội /t/ viết thêm từ chứa âm /t/ và đặt câu với từ đó.

Đội /st/ viết thêm từ chứa âm /st/ và đặt câu với từ đó.

GV cho HS xem lại 2 clip trên để HS tham khảo từ chứa âm trong các clip đó.

E.g. The Tigers like to ea**T** mea**T**.

I've lo**ST** my way to the **ST**ation.

Homework (2 minutes)

1. Practise saying the words that have sounds /t/ and /st/.
2. Write a passage about what you prepare for your holiday at the beach.

Trình bày bảng

Monday, May 25th, 2015

Unit 5 – Natural wonders of the world

Lesson 2 – A closer look 1

I. Brainstorming

II. Vocabulary

- plaster
- walking boots
- painkillers
- sun cream
- scissors
- sleeping bag
- backpack
- compass

1. Match the items with the pictures
2. Complete the following sentences
3. Order travel items

PRONUNCIATION of /t/ and /st/ sounds

III. Homework

Giáo án 3: Unit 5: Natural Wonders of the World

LESSON 3: A CLOSER LOOK 2

I. Objectives:

By the end of the lesson, students can:

- use lexical items related to 'things in nature'
- use comparative and superlative adjectives to describe things in nature
- use 'must' and 'mustn't' to give orders

II. Procedures: Các bước tiến hành

Hoạt động 1: Warm-up (3 to 5 minutes)

Guessing games



GV sử dụng chính những bức tranh trong bài học để ôn lại từ vựng, và sau đó cho HS đoán xem những bức tranh đó chỉ địa danh nào.

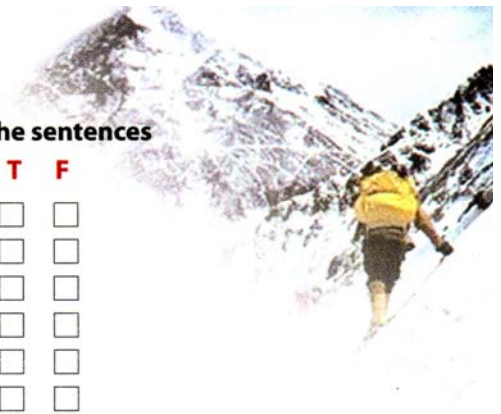
Lời dẫn:

- I have 5 pictures here, firstly look at them and tell me what they are.
- Yes, they are: mountain, lake, waterfall, river, and desert.
- And who can guess their names, please?

Hoạt động 2: Practice with superlative and comparative adjectives (25 minutes)

1 Vy is giving a quiz about wonders of the world. Read the sentences and guess if they are true (T) or false (F).

- | | T | F |
|---|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Mount Everest is the highest mountain in the world. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2. Ba Be Lake is the largest lake in Viet Nam. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3. Niagara Falls is the highest waterfall in the world. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4. Tra Co Beach is the longest beach in Viet Nam. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5. The Amazon is the widest river in the world. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 6. The Sahara is the hottest desert in the world. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |



Bài tập 1. True/ False prediction.

Sau khi HS đoán tên địa danh, GV cho HS mở sách, lần lượt giới thiệu tên các địa danh đó.

Lời dẫn:

– Now, let's open your books to see their names.

– They are: Mount Everest, Ba Be Lake, Niagara Falls, Tra Co Beach, Amazon River, and Sahara Desert.

– Now, I give you some information about them. Together guess if they are correct or not.

GV cho HS đoán cá nhân và so sánh với bạn bên cạnh.

GV gọi 1 đến 2 HS đọc dự đoán của mình.

Bài tập 2. Listen to Vy's answers to the quiz. Check your guesses.

3 Underline all the words ending in *-est* in the quiz.



Watch out!

What do you notice about number 6 in Vy's quiz?

Remember: consonants are doubled in adjectives with short vowel sounds. Can you think of more examples?

Bài tập 3. Underline all the words ending in *-est* in the quiz.

GV cho HS gạch chân các tính từ ngắn ở dạng so sánh nhất.

GV hỏi HS về sự khác biệt của tính từ so sánh nhất HOTTEST ở câu 6.

GV hỏi HS về sự khác biệt đó.

Lời dẫn:

– We have to double the consonants if they are followed by short vowel sounds.

– Who can give me some more examples, please?

→ BIGGEST, THINNEST, FATTEST, WETTEST...

Bài tập 4. Complete the table with the comparatives and superlatives.

4 Complete the table with the comparatives and superlatives.

	Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
irregular adjectives	good		best
	bad	worse	
short adjectives	tall		tallest
	long	longer	longest
	wide	wider	
	large		largest
	hot	hotter	

GV giới thiệu với HS về những tính từ ngắn bất quy tắc, bên cạnh những tính từ thêm ER và EST.

GV cho HS điền vào bảng.

GV hỏi HS bổ sung những tính từ bất quy tắc mà mình biết.

Lời dẫn:

– Besides short adjectives which we just need to add ER to make it comparative and add EST to make it superlative, there are some irregular adjectives. For example, 'good' becomes 'better' and 'best'.

– Now, complete the table and remember to double the ending consonant if it is followed by a short vowel.

– Who can add more irregular adjectives, please?

→ **Suggested answer:**

FAR → FURTHER → FURTHEST

MANY/ MUCH → MORE → MOST

LITTLE → LESS → LEAST

Key:

good	better	best
bad	worse	worst
tall	taller	tallest
long	longer	longest
wide	wider	widest
large	larger	largest
hot	hotter	hottest

Bài tập 5. Complete the passage.

GV hướng dẫn HS làm bài tập 5.

Lời dẫn:

– Now, Vy will introduce some other places. Read and give the correct form of comparative or superlative in the blank.

– There is one tip for you to differentiate: if we see 'than', we know it's comparative.

5 Now Vy is talking about other amazing places. Complete the passage.

Did you know Libya, in Africa, is the (1. hot) _____ country in the world? It's (2. hot) _____ than any other country! How about the (3. cold) _____? Antarctica is the (4. cold) _____ place in the world! It's even (5. cold) _____ than Russia.

The (6. big) _____ desert in the world is the Sahara. And now you know the (7. high) _____ mountain is called Mount Everest. Did you know it's in Nepal? Nepal is (8. small) _____ than India, but I think it's more beautiful.

Key:

- | | | |
|------------|------------|------------|
| 1. hottest | 2. hotter | 3. coldest |
| 4. coldest | 5. colder | 6. biggest |
| 7. highest | 8. smaller | |

Bài tập 6. Make sentences about some places.

6 Cut up some pieces of paper. Write the names of some famous places on them. Work in groups and make sentences about the places.

Example:

"The West Lake is the largest lake in Ha Noi."

The West Lake

GV chuẩn bị một số mảnh giấy có ghi tên một số địa danh nổi tiếng lên đó. GV cho HS làm việc nhóm 4 để HS sử dụng so sánh hơn và so sánh nhất để viết về địa danh đó.

Lời dẫn:

– I have some pieces of paper here. On them, I write names of some famous places.

– Work in groups of four please.

– Make sentences about the place you see using comparative and superlative.

Hoạt động 3: PRACTICE WITH MUST – MUSTN'T (13 minutes)

GV sử dụng bài hội thoại và tranh trong bài Getting Started để dạy ngữ pháp với MUST và MUSTN'T.

Lời dẫn:

– The whole class, turn back to the conversation in Getting started and answer my questions please:

– Who is the leader of the Geography Club?

– Why was Mai late?

– Are you sometimes late for class?

– How does your teacher feel?

– What does she say?

– Yes, correct. She says: You must be on time.

– Or she can say: You must not be late.

– So when do we use 'Must'? → Correct, we use it for rules.

– Who often say this? → Our teachers or our parents.

– Well done, who can give me more examples of rules around us?

– Vy, please!

Suggested answers:

We must wear uniforms at school.

We must finish our homework before going to school...

→ Check meaning, form, pronunciation

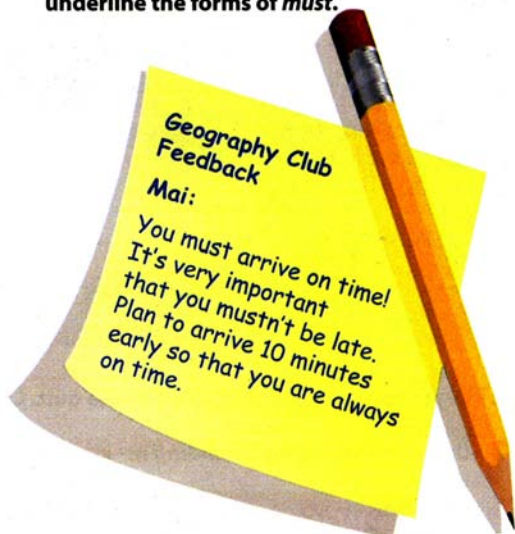
1. We say: He must wear a uniform or He must wears?

2. We say: /mʌst/ or /mæt/?

3. What's 'must' in Vietnamese?

Bài tập 7. Read and underline the forms of 'must'.

7 Vy is giving Mai some feedback. Read and underline the forms of must.



Bài tập 8. Write some more rules.

8 Look at the classroom rules below. Write some more rules for you and your classmates.

1. We must arrive on time.
2. We mustn't pick flowers in the school garden.
3. We must _____.
4. We mustn't _____.
5. _____.
6. _____.



GV cho HS nhìn các biển hiệu và hỏi HS sự khác nhau giữa biển xanh và đỏ.

GV cho HS viết các quy tắc của các biển trên.

Sau đó GV cho HS làm việc đôi, mỗi bạn vẽ 3 biển hiệu vào giấy và đưa cho bạn bên cạnh.

Bạn đó sẽ viết quy tắc cho từng biển hiệu.

2 bạn kiểm tra lại quy tắc bạn mình viết đã đúng chưa.

Nếu còn thời gian, GV cho các bạn dán biển hiệu lên bảng phụ 2 bên, và dán lên tường lớp học, cho lớp nói về toàn bộ quy tắc đó.

GV gọi 1 đến 2 bạn lên trình bày trước lớp.

Lời dẫn:

Everybody, look at these signs please.

Can you tell me the difference between the blue sign and the red one?

True, the blue sign tells us "We must do something"

The red sign tells us "We mustn't do something"

First, write the rules for the signs above: "We must put rubbish into the rubbish can"

"We mustn't play football in the schoolyard"

Good job, now work in pairs please! You draw 3 signs of rules on a piece of paper then give them to your partner. He or she will write the rules. Let's check if your friend is right or not.

Homework (2 minutes)

1. Write about the rules at home.
2. Write 6 sentences with the comparative and superlative about your family members.

Trình bày bảng

Monday, May 25th, 2015

Unit 5 – Natural Wonders of the World

Lesson 3 – A closer look 2

I. Guessing Game

II. Grammar

1. Comparative and superlative adjectives
Mount Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
Libya is hotter than any other countries.

2. Must and Mustn't
You must be on time.
You must not be late.

III. Practice

IV. Homework

Giáo án 4: Unit 5: Natural Wonders of the World

LESSON 4: COMMUNICATION

I. Objectives:

By the end of the lesson, students can:

- use the lexical items related to the topic 'things in nature' and 'travel items'
- use 'must' and 'mustn't' to give orders
- talk about and give travel advice
- read a travel guide entry about an interesting place.

II. Procedures: Các bước tiến hành

Hoạt động 1: Warm-up (3 to 5 minutes)

Phương án 1: Chơi trò chơi 'Speed up'

GV có các câu đố với 3 phương án gợi ý, HS trả lời trong vòng 30 giây.

Ở gợi ý thứ 1, vào giây 10, trả lời đúng, HS được 30 điểm.

Ở gợi ý thứ 2, vào giây 20, trả lời đúng, HS được 20 điểm.

Ở gợi ý thứ 3, vào giây 30, trả lời đúng, HS được 10 điểm.

Tùy vào trình độ của HS mà GV lựa chọn số lượng và độ khó của câu hỏi.

Các câu hỏi xoay quanh chủ đề Du lịch và Luật lệ.

Lời dẫn:

– Let's play the game 'Speed up' to warm us up, is it OK?

– I have some quizzes here, each quiz has 3 clues. If you can answer at the 10th second, you get 30 points.

– If you answer at the 20th second, you get 20 points.

– If you answer at the 30th second, you get 10 points.

Quiz 1: Which place is it?

1. It is a mountain range.
2. It is in Asia.
3. It consists of the highest mountain in the world.

Quiz 2: What is the name of this river?

1. It is a very famous river in Viet Nam.
2. It is not in the South.
3. Its name is a colour.

Hoạt động 2: Extra Vocabulary (5 minutes)

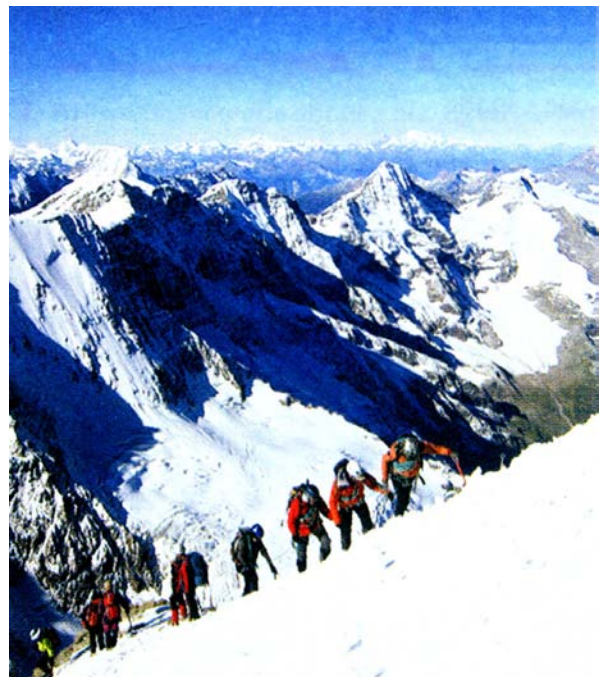
Trong bài trước, HS đã được học về các từ: *torch*, *tent* và *map*. Do đó bài này, GV sẽ dạy các (cụm) từ sau:

sun hat (n.phr.): (visual)

waterproof coat (n.phr.): (visual)

mobile phone (n.phr.): (reality)

GV giới thiệu hình ảnh của núi Everest và hỏi HS xem những đồ vật nào buộc phải mang theo khi leo núi Everest và giải thích lý do tại sao.



Lời dẫn:

– Look at this photo; it is Mount Everest, the highest mountain in the world.

– Let's think if we climb Mount Everest, what must we bring?

– Must we bring a torch?

– Must we bring a tent? Why?

Hoạt động 3: Practice

1 Read the travel guide entry.

GLOBETROTTER TRAVEL GUIDES

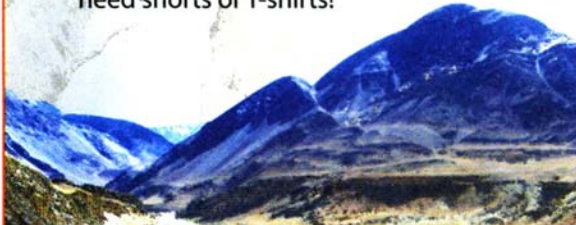
Description

The Himalayas is a mountain range. It's very special. Why? It contains the world's highest mountain – Mount Everest. Some of the world's longest rivers begin here too. The area is diverse, with forests and many kinds of plants and animals.

Travel tips

A trip to the Himalayas is an unforgettable experience. Remember to follow some important advice.

- You must follow the rules – you must ask before you visit the area.
- Plan when to visit: the best time to visit is between April and June.
- You mustn't travel alone. Always go in a group.
- You must tell people where you are going.
- Carry only necessary things.
- Bring the right clothes too – you don't need shorts or T-shirts!



Bài tập 1. Read the travel guide entry. (5 minutes)

GV cho HS đọc nhanh trong vòng 2 phút và hỏi một số câu hỏi sau.

Lời dẫn:

– Please read this text in 2 minutes and answer some of my questions:

– What is a mountain range?

– True, it is a series of mountains that are linked together.

– How about 'diverse', what does this mean? Please look at the surrounding words such as: forest, many kinds of animals and plants.

– True, so 'diverse' means "various kinds".

Bài tập 2. Make a list. (5 minutes)

2 Now make a list of the things you must take to the Himalayas. Then add things you mustn't take.

MUST	MUSTN'T
<i>Example:</i> compass	

GV cho HS đọc đoạn văn và lên danh sách những đồ phải mang và không được mang khi đi leo núi Himalayas. HS có thể bổ sung vào danh sách theo ý kiến riêng của mình.

Lời dẫn:

Now, read the text the second time and make a list of the things you must take to the Himalayas. You can add things in your own opinion to the list.

Bài tập 3. Role-play "being a tour guide and a tourist". (20 minutes)

GV cho HS đóng vai một người là hướng dẫn viên du lịch, người kia là du khách. Hướng dẫn viên sẽ nói cho du khách biết những đồ cần chuẩn bị cho chuyến leo núi Himalayas. Và đưa ra lý do cho việc mang theo đồ đó.

GV cũng khuyến khích HS sử dụng so sánh hơn và nhất trong đoạn thoại của mình.

Sau đó GV mời HS lên trình bày đoạn hội thoại.

Lời dẫn:

– We have quite known about Himalayas. Let's work in pairs.

– One is a tour guide, the other is a tourist.

– The tour guide will tell your partner what to prepare for their trip to the Himalayas. Try to give your reasons.

3 Role-play being a tour guide and a tourist. Tell your partner what to prepare for their trip to the Himalayas. Try to give reasons.

Example:

A: I want to go to the Himalayas.

B: OK. I think you must take a waterproof coat. It's the highest mountain in the world. It's cold and rainy there!

A: Yes. Anything else?

B: ...

4 Perform your role-play for the class.

Kết bài (2 minutes)

Through the lesson, we all know traveling can only be interesting if we well prepare for the trip. So remember to bring appropriate things with you, is it OK?

Homework (3 minutes)

– Write about things you must/ mustn't take to the beach. Give reasons.

Trình bày bảng

Monday, May 25th , 2015

Unit 5 – Natural wonders of the world

Lesson 4 – Communication

I. Speed up

II. New words

- sun hat (n.phr.): (visual)
- waterproof coat (n.phr.): (visual)
- mobile phone (n.phr.): (reality)

III. Practice

1. Read the travel guide
2. Make a list
3. Role-play
4. Perform your role-play

IV. Homework

Giáo án 5: Unit 5: Natural Wonders of the World

LESSON 5: SKILLS 1

I. Objectives:

By the end of the lesson, students can:

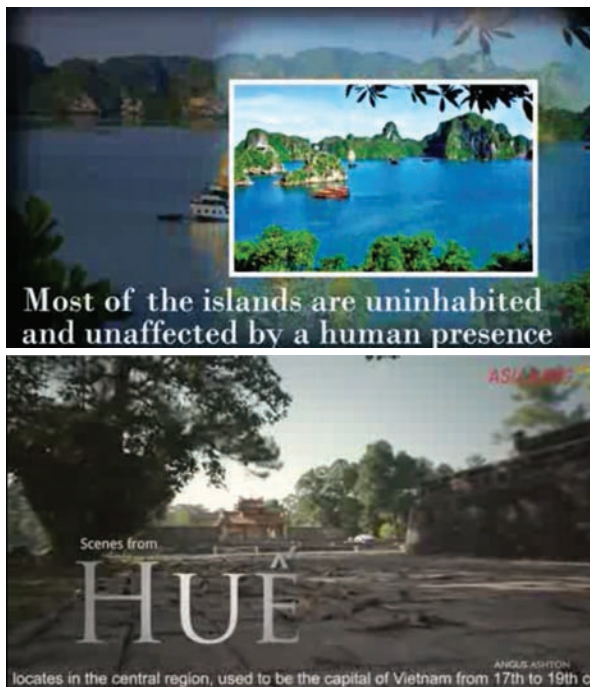
- use the lexical items related to the topic 'things in nature' and 'travel items'
- use comparative and superlative adjectives to describe things in nature
- talk about and give travel advice
- read a brochure for tourist information

II. Procedures: Các bước tiến hành

Hoạt động 1: Warm-up (3 to 5 minutes)

Brainstorming

GV cho lớp xem hai clip về Huế và Vịnh Hạ Long để HS có những hiểu biết ban đầu về hai địa danh qua hình ảnh và lời giới thiệu về các địa danh này. Sau đó cho lớp brainstorm những gì mình biết về Huế và Vịnh Hạ Long.



Lớp chia thành hai đội.

Mỗi đội cử các thành viên lên viết những điều mình biết về Huế và Vịnh Hạ Long (những điểm đến nổi tiếng, đặc sản...)



Lời dẫn:

– First, I have two clips introducing about Ha Long Bay and Hue City, two very famous places in Viet Nam. Let's watch them and brainstorm all the things you know about these 2 cities.

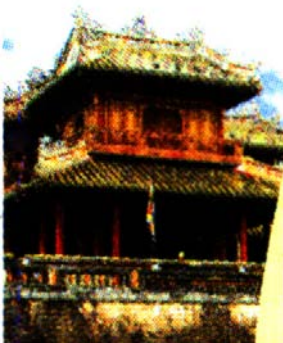
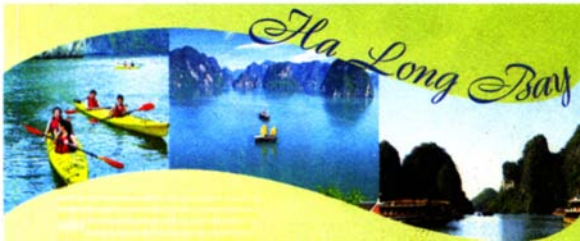
– Each person writes one thing only.

– You have 1 minute to do this.

Hoạt động 2: Comprehension Reading (20 minutes)

1 Open prediction

1. Where is the passage from?
2. What is it about?
3. What do you know about the subject?



GV cho HS xem hình ảnh về hai địa danh và đưa ra dự đoán về 3 câu hỏi trên.

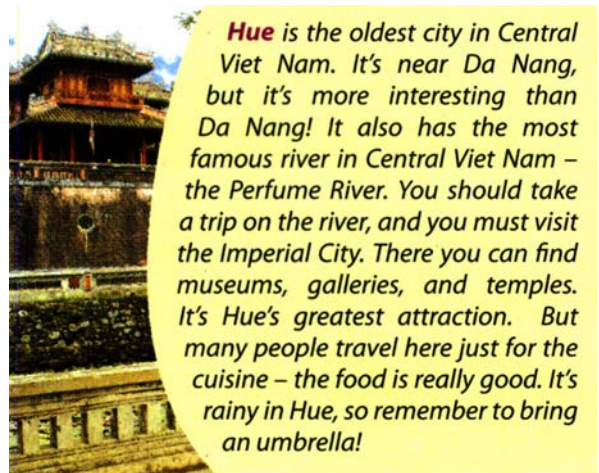
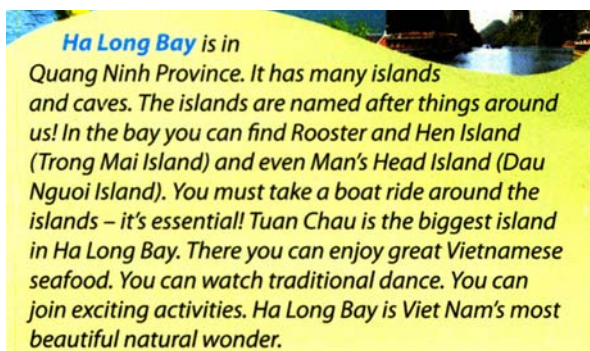
GV cho HS thảo luận với bạn bên cạnh trước khi cho HS đọc bài.

Lời dẫn:

– Before you read, I would like you to look at these pictures and give your prediction by answering these 3 questions.

– After that, discuss your prediction with your partner.

GV cho HS đọc bài và đưa ra câu trả lời cho 3 câu hỏi trên (GV có thể chấp nhận nhiều phương án trả lời khác nhau của HS)



2 Find the words and check their meaning.

GV tiếp tục sử dụng kỹ năng *Guessing words in context* cho HS tìm ra nghĩa của bốn từ mới.

GV cho HS gạch chân từ mới và tìm những từ bên cạnh có liên quan đến ý nghĩa của từ mới đó

2 Find these words in the passages in 1, then check their meaning.

essential activities attraction cuisine

New words:

– **essential** (adj): You **must** take a boat around the islands. It is **essential**.

– **activities** (n plr): You can **enjoy great Vietnamese seafood**. You can **watch traditional dance**. You can **join** exciting **activities**.

– **attraction** (n): You must visit **the Imperial City**. There you can find **museums, galleries and temples**. It's Hue's greatest **attraction**.

– **cuisine** (n): But many people travel here just for the **cuisine** – **the food** here is really good.

New words checking: Matching

activities	các hoạt động
cuisine	ẩm thực
essential	cần thiết
attraction	điểm hấp dẫn

Bài tập 3 và 4

GV cho HS đọc lại cá nhân chi tiết 2 bài đọc, hướng dẫn HS định vị đúng phần có chứa câu trả lời để hoàn thành bài 3 và 4.



Hoạt động 4: Homework

(Giao bài tập cho tiết Project)

GV chia lớp thành 6 nhóm, 2 nhóm sẽ tìm kiếm tư liệu và trình bày vào giấy A0 hoặc bằng slide show về *Weather in Viet Nam*, *Travelling in Viet Nam* và *Natural Attraction in Viet Nam*.

Lời dẫn:

– To broaden our mind about Viet Nam, I would like you to work in groups to do the task that I am going to give you: Group 1 and 2 will present about *Weather in Viet Nam*, 3 and 4 will present about *Travelling in Viet Nam* and 4 and 6 will present about *Natural Attraction in Viet Nam*.

– Use the Internet or any kinds of materials to illustrate your ideas.

Trình bày bảng

Monday, May 25th , 2015

Unit 5 – Natural Wonders of the World

Lesson 5 – Skills 1

I. Brainstorming

II. Reading

New words:

- essential (a)
- activities (n plr.)
- attraction (n)
- cuisine (n)

III. Speaking

IV. Homework: How well do you know about Viet Nam?

Sau khi chơi xong, GV có thể hỏi một số câu hỏi để biết sự hiểu biết của HS về các địa danh trên.

Lời dẫn:

- Have you ever been to Nha Trang?
- What is Nha Trang famous for?
- Why do more tourists like to travel to Da Nang nowadays?
- ...

Hoạt động 2: Listening (10 minutes)

Bài tập 1. Which place does Nick's family choose?

Trước khi cho HS nghe, GV cho HS nhìn vào 4 địa danh trong sách. Và hỏi nếu là Nick, HS sẽ lựa chọn địa danh nào và giải thích lí do tại sao.

GV khuyến khích HS đưa ra các lý do của cá nhân mình.

Sau đó cho HS nghe lần 1 để xem gia đình nhà Nick chọn nơi nào.

Lời dẫn:

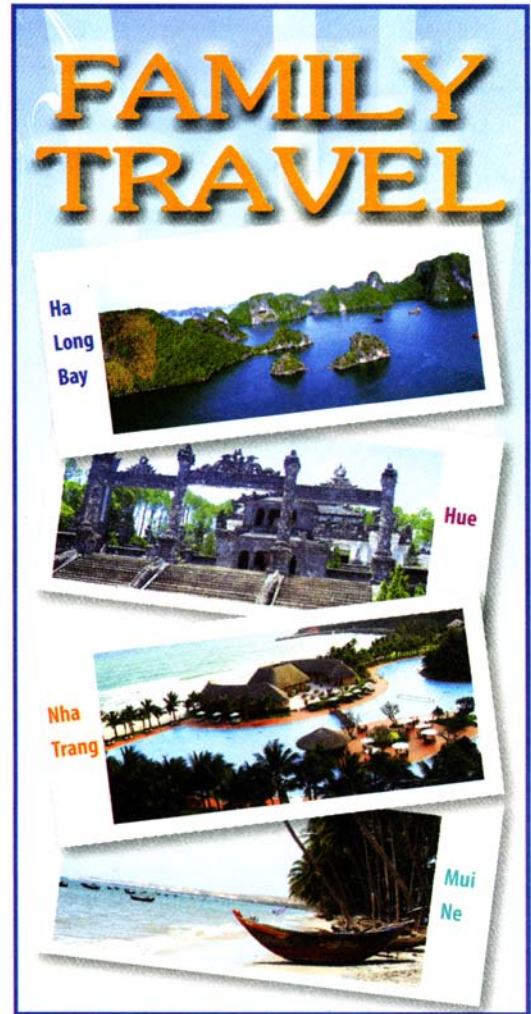
- Nick's family is on holiday in Viet Nam. They are in the travel agent's.
- Suppose you were Nick. Which place would you choose? Why?
- OK, great, you make me want to go to Nha Trang, too.
- Now, let's listen and find out which place Nick's family chooses.

Bài tập 2. Listen again and answer the following questions

2 Listen again and answer the following questions.

1. What other places does the travel agent talk about?
2. What questions does Nick's mum ask?
3. What advice does the travel agent give?
4. Is Nick happy about the choice?

GV cho HS nghe lại và trả lời câu hỏi. Nếu HS gặp khó khăn, GV có thể dùng đĩa tại phần có chứa câu trả lời.



- 1 Nick's family are in the travel agent's. They want to go on holiday. They are choosing a place from the brochure above. Which place do they choose?

- Key:**
1. Ha Long Bay, Hue, Mui Ne or Nha Trang.
 2. Can we see a picture of the hotel in Mui Ne? / Which is cheaper, Mui Ne or Ha Long Bay?
 3. Mui Ne is cheaper but I think Ha long Bay is more interesting.
 4. Yes, he is.



Tape script:

Travel Agent: We have some great deals. I recommend Ha Long Bay, Hue, Mui Ne or Nha Trang.

Nick: Wow! I love the beach. Can we go to Mui Ne, Mum?

Nick's mum: Well let's think, Nick. Can I see a picture of the hotel in Mui Ne?

Travel Agent: Yes, here you are.

Nick's mum: Which is cheaper, Mui Ne or Ha Long Bay?

Travel Agent: Mui Ne is cheaper but I think Ha Long Bay is more interesting.

Nick's dad: Yes, you're right! I think I want to go to Ha Long Bay. It's better than Mui Ne.

Nick: Oh.

Travel Agent: Yes, it's rainy in Mui Ne at this time of year. You must take umbrellas and waterproof coats.

Nick's mum: OK, let's book Ha Long Bay please.

Hoạt động 3: Writing (25 minutes)

3 Write a travel guide about a place you know.

Research

- Do you have pictures or can you draw a map of the place?
- What natural wonders are there?
- How do they compare to other natural wonders?
- What things can you do there? What things must you do?



GV nhắc lại 3 bước Research, Draft và Check của một bài viết.

Trong bước Research, GV có thể cho HS sử dụng các hình ảnh và dữ liệu của phần Warm-up, hoặc nếu có năng khiếu HS có thể vẽ địa danh mà mình sắp viết về. Sau đó trả lời các câu hỏi gợi ý của bước Research.

Lời dẫn:

– There are three very important parts of Writing that you mustn't forget, namely: Research, Draft and Check. So please do your Research first.

– To do this well, you can use the pictures on the board or you can draw yourself.

– Then brainstorm all the ideas about this place.

– Finally, answer all the questions above.

4 In notes, fill each blank in the network with the information about the place. Then use these notes to write a short paragraph about it.



Draft

Write a draft.

Check

Check your draft. Can you improve it? Have you used superlatives correctly? Have you used *must* for orders and advice?

Are your spelling and punctuation correct?

4 Make notes

– GV cho HS điền vào phiếu trên.

– Sau đó viết bản thảo đầu tiên của mình.

– Khuyến khích HS sử dụng so sánh hơn, so sánh nhất, và cấu trúc 'Must'.

– Hướng dẫn học sinh miêu tả địa danh trước khi đưa ra lời khuyên cho du khách du lịch tại đó.

Lời dẫn:

– Everyone, after you finish your Research part, please fill in the blanks with the information about the place.

– Try to use comparative and superlative adjectives and 'Must' as well.

– Write your first draft and share it with your partner.

– You should write the description before writing the travel tips.

– Check your partner's draft using the questions:

1. Has he/she used comparatives and superlatives correctly?

2. Has he/she used 'must' for orders and advice?

3. Is his/her spelling or punctuation correct?

Homework (2 minutes)

– Write the final version at home.

Trình bày bảng

Monday, May 25th , 2015

Unit 5 – Natural Wonders of the World

Lesson 6 – Skills 2

I. Who is faster?

II. Listening

1. Which place does Nick's family choose?

2. Listen and answer the questions.

III. Writing a travel guide about a place you know

1. Research

2. Make notes

IV. Homework

Giáo án 7: Unit 5: Natural Wonders of the World

LESSON 7: LOOKING BACK - PROJECT

I. Objectives:

By the end of the lesson, students can:

- use the lexical items related to the topic 'things in nature' and 'travel items'
- pronounce correctly the sounds /t/ and /st/ in isolation and in context
- use fixed expressions for classroom situations
- use comparative and superlative adjectives to describe things in nature
- use 'must' and 'mustn't' to give orders
- talk about and give travel advice
- listen to get information about travel plans
- read a brochure for tourist information
- write a travel guide entry about an interesting place

II. Procedures: Các bước tiến hành

Đây là bài tổng hợp lại toàn bộ các từ vựng, ngữ pháp, kiến thức mà HS đã được học trong 6 lessons trước đó. Vì vậy GV khuyến khích HS làm việc cá nhân để tự đánh giá xem mình đã lĩnh hội được toàn bộ kiến thức đã học hay chưa. Từ đó, cải thiện những gì HS còn chưa nắm vững.

GV động viên HS không mở lại sách hoặc vở khi làm các bài tập trong tiết học này.

Do vậy toàn bộ phần Looking back, HS sẽ làm việc cá nhân trên lớp. Nếu gặp khó khăn, HS có thể hỏi bạn bên cạnh hoặc thầy, cô giáo.

Hoạt động 1: Looking back (15 to 20 minutes)

Lời dẫn:

– We have nearly reached our destination guys, as this is our last lesson of this unit. So I would like you to work individually almost all the time to do all the exercises in Looking back part.

– If you have any difficulties, don't hesitate to ask your partner to help you. However, before doing that, I would really want you to work your brain the hardest and try not to refer back to the 6 previous lessons. Is that OK?

– Now, time is yours. Let's finish all the exercises individually.

LOOKING BACK

Vocabulary

Things in nature

1 Label the things in nature you can see in this picture.



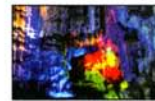
1. _____



2. _____



3. _____



4. _____



5. _____



6. _____



7. _____



8. _____



9. _____

Travel items

2 Write the words.



1. _____



2. _____



3. _____



4. _____



5. _____



6. _____

Grammar

3 Fill the gaps in the following sentences.

1. It's the _____ (hot) desert in the world.
2. The Mekong is the _____ (long) river in Viet Nam.
3. Fansipan is the _____ (high) mountain in Viet Nam.
4. Ho Chi Minh City is the _____ (large) city in Viet Nam.
5. The boat trip was the _____ (good) experience of my life.

- 4 Match the name of a natural wonder in column A with a word/phrase in column B. 1 is an example.**

A	B	Your answer
1. Everest	a. bay	1-d
2. Loch Lomond	b. desert
3. Ha Long	c. freshwater lake
4. Ayers	d. mountain
5. The Sahara	e. rock

- 5 Work in pairs and practise the conversation below. Discuss all the natural wonders in 4 and any related information you know.**

- A: What is *Everest*?
 B: I think it is *the highest mountain* in the world.
 A: What is *Loch Lomond*?
 B: I don't know. Do you know it?
 A: Yes. It is *the largest freshwater lake* in Great Britain.
 (or: No, I don't).

Communication

- 6 Complete the dialogue.**

- A: It's dangerous to go hiking there. You (1) _____ tell someone where you are going.
 B: Yes. And I (2) _____ take a warm coat. It is very cold there.
 A: Yes, and you (3) _____ take a mobile phone. It's very important.
 B: OK, and I (4) _____ take all necessary things along with me.

Finished! Now you can	✓	✓✓	✓✓✓
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> name natural things & travel items use superlative adjectives to describe the world around you give orders and advice using <i>must</i> and <i>mustn't</i> 			

Vocabulary

- 1 & 2** Ss work individually to do the exercises. Then Ss can check their answers before discussing the answers as a class. However, Ss should keep a record of their original answers so they can use that information in their *Now you can...* statement.

Key:					
1	1. mountain	2. waterfall	3. forest	4. cave	5. desert
	6. lake	7. beach	8. island	9. valley	
2	1. scissors	2. sleeping bag	3. compass		
	4. torch	5. pain killers	6. plaster		

Grammar

- 3** As above, ask Ss to work individually to complete the sentences.

Key:				
1. hottest	2. longest	3. highest		
4. largest	5. best			

- 4** Ask Ss to work in pairs and match the name of a natural wonder in column A with a word/phrase in column B. Monitor the activity and offer help to Ss when necessary.

A	B	Your answers
1. Everest	a. bay	1 - d
2. Loch Lomond	b. desert	2 - c
3. Ha Long	c. freshwater lake	3 - a
4. Ayers	d. mountain	4 - e
5. The Sahara	e. rock	5 - b

3 As above, ask Ss to work individually to complete the sentences.

Key: 1. hottest 2. longest 3. highest
4. largest 5. best

4 Ask Ss to work in pairs and match the name of a natural wonder in column A with a word/phrase in column B. Monitor the activity and offer help to Ss when necessary.

A	B	Your answers
1. Everest	a. bay	1 - d
2. Loch Lomond	b. desert	2 - c
3. Ha Long	c. freshwater lake	3 - a
4. Ayers	d. mountain	4 - e
5. The Sahara	e. rock	5 - b

5 Ask Ss to work in pairs and practise the conversation. Draw Ss' attention to the questions and answers for the information about *Mount Everest* and *Loch Lomond*. Then ask them to discuss all the other natural wonders in 4. Ask them to provide any related information they know about these natural wonders.

Communication

6 Divide Ss into A group and B group. Allow them to complete their parts of the dialogue. Then Ss act out the dialogue. Choose pairs to demonstrate for the class. T can encourage them to include mimes and actions.

Key: 1. must 2. must
3. must 4. must

Hoạt động 2: Project (20 to 25 minutes)

PROJECT

HOW WELL DO YOU KNOW VIET NAM?

1 In groups, ask and answer questions about Viet Nam.



Example:

A: What's the wettest place in Viet Nam?

B: I think it's

WEATHER

What's/wet/place in Viet Nam?

What's/hot/place?

What's/cool/place?

What's/cold/place?

TRAVELLING

What's/nice/city in Viet Nam?

What's/good/place for tourists to come?

What's/convenient/time of the year to visit it?

What are the reasons?

What's/fast/way to travel around Viet Nam?

NATURAL ATTRACTION

What's/high/mountain in Viet Nam?

What's/long/river?

What's/big/island?

What's/large/lake?

2 Write down what you know about Viet Nam. Talk about the weather, natural wonders and travelling. Start with: "In Viet Nam, the ... is ..."

• Phần Project này GV đã giao cho các nhóm làm việc từ bài Skills 1 do đó phần kiến thức mà mỗi nhóm phụ trách đã được nghiên cứu kỹ lưỡng ở nhà. Vì thế, tiết Project này sẽ trở thành một sân chơi thú vị và được tổ chức như sau:

• Nhóm 1 và 2 cùng thảo luận lại với nhau hỏi từ 5 đến 10 câu hỏi về chủ điểm 'Weather' cho 4 nhóm còn lại và chấm điểm các nhóm. Ví dụ: *What's the wettest place in Viet Nam?*. Hai đội còn lại, đội nào có câu trả lời đúng và nhanh hơn, đội đó được điểm.

• GV cho hai đội còn lại làm tương tự với hai chủ điểm 'Traveling' và 'Natural Attraction'.

• Sau khi phần thi kết thúc, 3 đội sẽ cử đại diện trình bày bài thuyết trình về 3 chủ điểm trên.

• Các bạn còn lại lắng nghe, cho nhận xét ưu, khuyết điểm của nhóm bạn. GV sẽ là người chốt cuối cùng về các sản phẩm đó. (Dành lời khen cho các nhóm có số lượng người trình bày nhiều, có nhiều tài liệu, tranh ảnh, video clips minh họa cho sản phẩm của nhóm mình)

Lời dẫn:

– 2 sessions before, I gave you the assignment of presenting three topics related to 'Travel in Viet

Nam'. You must have done it carefully within your group members for sure.

– *First, I would like you to have a contest.*

– *Team A (groups 1 and 2) will ask questions about the topic you have prepared for the other two teams to answer. Who answers correctly and is faster is the winner.*

– *Then, after our contest, each team will present your topic for us to hear, is it OK?*

Homework (2 minutes)

GV có thể giao thêm bài tập cho HS trong sách bài tập.

Trình bày bảng

Monday, May 25th, 2015

Unit 5 – Natural Wonders of the World

Lesson 7 – Looking back – Project

I. Looking back

1. Vocabulary

2. Grammar

II. Project: How well do you know about Viet Nam?

III. Homework

Giáo án 1: Unit 6: Our Tet holiday

LESSON 1: GETTING STARTED

Happy New Year!

Thời gian: 45 phút

I. Objectives:

By the end of the lesson, students can extend and practise vocabulary related to 'Tet': things and activities.

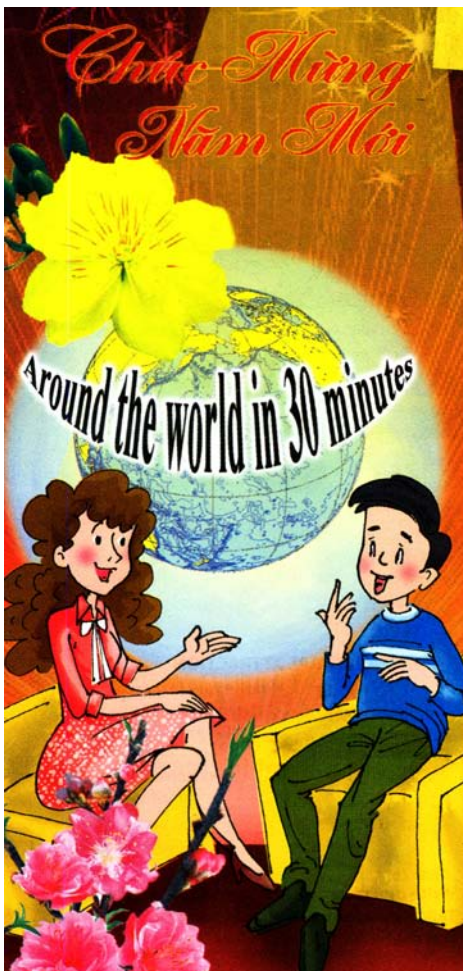
II. Procedures:

Hoạt động 1: Warm-up (5 minutes)

Để dẫn dắt học sinh vào nội dung bài học, giáo viên có thể lựa chọn các phương án sau để cho học sinh hoạt động:

Phương án 1: Chơi trò chơi 'Memory Game'

– Look at this picture for 20 seconds and try to remember the details.



– Our class is divided into 2 teams. The members of each team take turns to choose the number from 1 to 6. If you can get a Lucky Number, you'll get one point without having to give the answer. If you get a question, you have to answer it. One correct answer gives you one point. Are you sure what to do now? Start!

1. Lucky Number

2. What is the name of the show? ('Around the world in 30 minutes')

3. Who is the interviewer? The boy or the girl? (The girl)

4. Where are they? (At a studio/ a show/ a TV station.)


5. How many kinds of flowers can you see in the picture? (2 kinds of flowers)

6. What may they talk about? (The new year/ Tet holiday)

– What is in my secret picture? (Pháo hoa/ Fireworks)

– When are there fireworks? (On special occasions or holidays)

– So which holiday are we going to study in this unit? Open your books and tell me, please.

	<p>What is the name of the show? Around the world in 30 minutes</p>	<p>Who is the interviewer? The boy or the girl? The girl is the interviewer.</p>
<p>Where are they? They're at a studio/ a show/ at the TV station.</p>	<p>How many kinds of flowers can you see in the picture? I/ We can see two kinds of flowers in the picture.</p>	<p>What may they talk about? They may talk about the Tet holiday/ the New year.</p>

Phương án 2: Chơi trò chơi "Brainstorming"

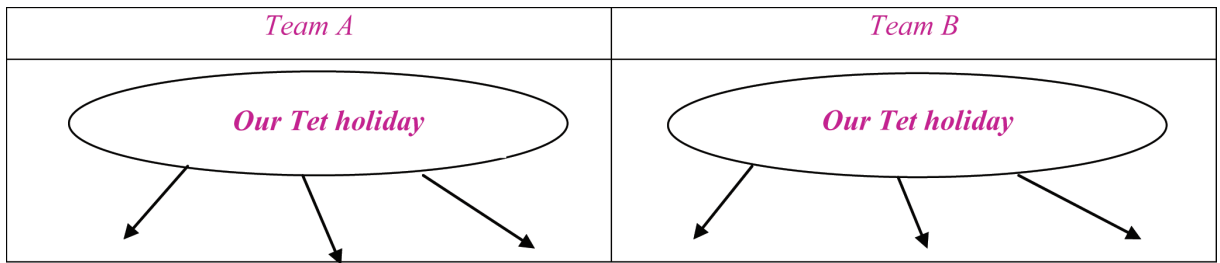
– What's the date today, class?

– What holiday is coming near to us? Do you happen to know? (Tet holiday)

– Well, think about our Tet holiday and list as many words as possible related to the topic "Our Tet holiday"

– You are divided into 2 teams. One member from each team, in turn, moves to the board and writes any word concerning the topic given.

- In 2 minutes, the team with more correct answers will be the winner. Are you ready now? Start!



- ... Well done! Now open your book and look at the picture. Phong is telling about our Tet holiday. What does he say about this special and important holiday? Let's find in our lesson today.

Hoạt động 2: Elicit the dialogue (15 minutes)

GV viết lên bảng nhan đề đoạn hội thoại "Happy New Year!"

HS ghi chép đầu bài và chỉ mở sách khi có hiệu lệnh của GV.

- First of all, read the statements and guess about the conversation between Phong and the interviewer.

Statements	True	False
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Phong is the first person on the show. 2. This year, Tet is in February. 3. People have a lot of fireworks at Tet. 4. Phong loves eating good food during Tet. 5. Next, the interviewer will talk to a person from Japan. 		

- Now tell me your predictions, please.


- Well, open your books, listen to the recording and check your answers: 1F - 2F - 3F - 4T - 5T

- Who can practise the conversation again?

- Do you understand their conversation? Read it again and do Exercise 3, p. 59 please.

3 Find the information from 1 and fill the blanks.

1. This year we will have Tet at _____.
2. We decorate our _____.
3. We buy _____ and _____.



4. We shouldn't burn _____.
5. We eat _____ and get _____ during Tet.
6. Tet is a time for _____.

Key:

1. This year we will have Tet at *the end of January*.
2. We decorate our *house*.
3. We buy *flowers and plants*.
4. We shouldn't burn *fireworks*.
5. We eat *great food* and get *lucky money* during Tet.
6. Tet is a time for *family gatherings*.

Hoạt động 3: Teach new words (15 minutes)

– Phong is talking about Tet holiday and I'll give you some vocabulary of this topic:

- lucky money (n): (situation)
- peach blossom (n): (visual)
- apricot blossom (n): (visual)
- family gathering (n): (explanation)
- house decoration (n): (explanation)

– Now, check whether you remember the new words or not. Let's do Exercise 4&5, p. 59 in your book.

4 Write the words/phrases in the box under the appropriate pictures.



1. _____

2. _____

3. _____

4. _____



5. _____

6. _____

7. _____

8. _____

- a. lucky money
- b. peach blossoms and apricot blossoms
- c. *banh chung* and *banh tet*
- d. family gathering
- e. swimming pool
- f. house decorations
- g. books
- h. school ground

5 Look at the pictures again. Which pictures do you think are related to Tet?

Key:

1. b 2. a 3. c 4. e 5. h 6. g 7. f 8. d

About Tet – Picture 1 2 3 7 8

Hoạt động 4: Game (6 minutes)

– Tet is a special holiday for all of us, and you may do special activities on this occasion. So what are your best activities? Do you think that you have the same interests and hobbies? Let's play the game in Exercise 6, p. 59.

6 Game

Write down three things or activities you like best about Tet.

Compare your list with the members of your group. Report the results to the class. The group that has the most items wins.

Getting lucky money

– In order to tell about your hobbies, you can begin with “I like/love/enjoy”, for example: I like going to the flower market.

– Don’t hesitate to ask me any new words you want to know, right?

Kết bài (2 minutes)

– You have done a lot of activities today. Now, can you remember what you have learnt today?

– Minh, please!

– Yes, you are right, through the lesson you can now know how you can improve your vocabulary on the topic “Our Tet holiday” and you can also tell about some of the activities you like doing on Tet holiday.

– I think that’s enough for today and here’s your homework.

Homework (2 minutes)

1. Learn the vocabulary.
2. Prepare for the next lesson.

Trình bày bảng

Unit 6 – Our Tet holiday

Lesson 1 – Getting started – Happy New Year

I. Memory game

II. Listen and read: Vocabulary

- lucky money (n)
- peach blossom (n)
- apricot blossom (n)
- family gathering (n)
- house decoration (n)

III. Homework

Giáo án 2: Unit 6: Our Tet holiday

LESSON 2: A CLOSER LOOK 1

I. Objectives:

By the end of the lesson, students can:

- extend and practise vocabulary related to 'Tet': things, activities and practices
- pronounce correctly the sounds /s/ and /ʃ/ in isolation and in context.

II. Procedures: Các bước tiến hành

Hoạt động 1: Warm-up (5 minutes)

Phương án 1: Chơi trò chơi 'Lucky numbers'

– In the previous lesson, we already talked about special things for Tet. Do you remember all the vocabulary in Lesson 1? Let's play 'Lucky numbers' now.

– I'm going to give you some definitions or explanations and you have to say out the word.

– Choose the number of the questions you want to choose. One correct answer gives you one point and if you can get a lucky number, you can also get one point without having to answer any questions.

1. People often say these things when they meet each other on Tet holiday. (wishes)

2. A very popular and traditional flower in southern Viet Nam. (apricot blossom)

3. Something people usually do to make their house beautiful before Tet. (house decoration(s))

4. What do children like to get from their parents or grandparents/ the adults on Tet holiday? (lucky money)

5. A very popular and traditional flower in northern Viet Nam. (peach blossom)

6. Lucky Number

7. What do people cook/ eat during the Tet holiday? (special food)

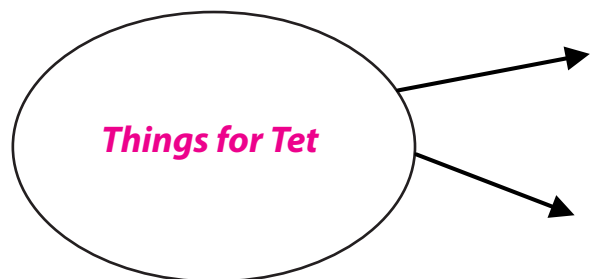
8. Something people like to watch on the New Year's Eve. (fireworks)

(Lưu ý: Với HS khá giỏi hơn, GV có thể cho HS chơi trò "Back to the board". 1 HS từ mỗi đội sẽ quay mặt lên bảng và nhìn vào tranh mà GV đã chuẩn

bị từ trước, sau đó đưa ra lời giải thích bằng Tiếng Anh để đồng đội ở dưới gọi tên đúng từ đó)

– *Well done! I'm pleased that you are very good at vocabulary. You have listed a lot of new words related to our Tet holidays. We'll continue to learn more words of this topic in our lesson today.*

Phương án 2: Chơi trò chơi 'Brainstorming'/'Network'



Phương án 3: Chơi trò chơi 'Kim's game'/'Pass the chalk'

– We have two teams as usual.

– Look at the pictures in 20 seconds and you have 2 minutes to write down as many things as you can remember.

– The team that writes more things will be the winner. Are you ready?





– Well done! I'm pleased that you are very good at vocabulary. You have listed a lot of new words related to our Tet holidays. We'll continue to learn more words of this topic in our lesson today.

Hoạt động 2: Vocabulary on Tet holiday (22 minutes)

a. Things for Tet: Exercise 1&2 p. 60, Student's Book

New words:

- relative (n): (explanation)
- present (n): (visual)
- furniture (n): (example)
- calendar (n): (visual)
- pagoda (n): (visual)

1 Listen and repeat the words in the box.

a. wish	b. fireworks	c. furniture	d. present	e. shopping	f. tree
g. flower	h. relative	i. pagoda	j. calendar	k. special food	

– Checking technique: Labelling

2 Work in groups. Label the pictures with the words in 1.



Key:

- | | | | |
|---------------|--------------|-------------------|---------------|
| 1b. fireworks | 2j. calendar | 3h. relative | 4c. furniture |
| 5i. pagoda | 6f. tree | 7e. shopping | 8a. wish |
| 9d. present | 10g. flower | 11k. special food | |

b. Activities for Tet: Exercise 3&4, p. 60, Student's Book

– We have many special things for Tet, and what about Tet activities? What do people do on this special occasion? Let's do Exercise 3&4 in your book.

– Who can help me read aloud the request of Exercise 3?

– OK. As you know, some verbs and nouns go together and some don't. For example, we can say "to plant or decorate a tree" but we cannot say "to cook a tree".

- Now find the correct verbs to match with the suitable nouns to make phrases about Tet activities.
 - Do the exercises individually first, then compare in pairs before we check altogether.
 - Have you got any new words in this exercise?
- (GV gợi ý nghĩa động từ "(to) hang" trước khi các em luyện tập bài tập này)

3 Match the verbs with the suitable nouns.

Verbs	Nouns
<p>go to cook visit</p> <p>give clean</p> <p>make decorate</p> <p>hang plant</p> <p>watch do buy</p>	<p>a wish special food</p> <p>fireworks the furniture</p> <p>our house lucky money</p> <p>a pagoda the shopping</p> <p>relatives peach blossoms</p> <p>trees a calendar</p>

4 Write the phrases you have formed in 3. The first one is an example.

1. cook special food	7. _____
2. _____	8. _____
3. _____	9. _____
4. _____	10. _____
5. _____	11. _____
6. _____	12. _____

Key:

- | | | | |
|----------------------|------------------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| 1. cook special food | 4. visit relatives | 7. plant trees | 10. watch fireworks |
| 2. go to a pagoda | 5. clean the furniture | 8. make a wish | 11. do the shopping |
| 3. give lucky money | 6. decorate our house | 9. hang a calendar | 12. buy peach blossoms |

Hoạt động 3: Pronunciation of /s/ and /ʃ/ sounds (16 minutes)

GV cho HS xem clip về quy tắc phát âm 2 âm , sau đó cho HS luyện tập các bài tập 5, 6, 7 – trang 60, 61 – SGK.

Đường link: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=co362pUUZqg>



Sounds

's' v 'sh'

/s/	/ʃ/
see	she
Sue	short
sit	ship
sea	show

5 Listen and repeat the words.

celebrate	shopping	summer
school	spring	wish
special	blossoms	rice
she	should	rubbish

Which words have the sound /ʃ/ and which words have the sound /s/? Listen again and write them in the appropriate columns.

/ʃ/		/s/	

Key:

/s/: blossoms, summer, rice, celebrate, school, special, spring

/ʃ/: she, shopping, should, wish, rubbish

Key:

/s/: 1, 4, 6, 7

- We come home every summer.
- I'm second in my class.
- This is a small garden.
- Spring is coming.

/ʃ/: 2, 3, 5

- We should leave early.
- I will make a wish.
- My mother goes shopping every day.

6 Listen to the sentences and tick (✓) which has /ʃ/ and which has /s/.

- We come home every summer.
- We should leave early.
- I will make a wish.
- I'm second in my class.
- My mother goes shopping every day.
- This is a small garden.
- Spring is coming.

	/ʃ/	/s/

7 Listen and practise reading the short poem. Pay attention to the sounds /ʃ/ and /s/.



Homework (2 minutes)

1. Learn the vocabulary by heart.
2. Do Exercise A1, 2 – B4 (p. 40, 41 – Workbook)
3. Prepare for the next lesson.

Trình bày bảng

Unit 6 – Our Tet Holiday

Lesson 2 – A closer look 1

I. Lucky numbers/ Back to the board

II. Vocabulary: Things and activities for Tet

- relative (n)
- present (n)
- furniture (n)
- calendar (n)
- pagoda (n)
- (to) hang

III. Pronunciation of /s/ and /ʃ/ sounds

IV. Homework

Giáo án 3: Unit 6: Our Tet holiday

LESSON 3: A CLOSER LOOK 2

I. Objectives:

By the end of the lesson, Ss will be able to use *should/ shouldn't* for advice and *will/ won't* for future activities.

II. Procedures: Các bước tiến hành

Hoạt động 1: Warm-up (5 minutes)

Chơi trò chơi 'Brainstorming race'

- GV chia lớp thành 2 đội, mỗi đội sử dụng 1 màu phấn khác nhau.
- Thành viên mỗi đội lần lượt di chuyển nhanh lên bảng và ghi đáp án vào 2 cột GV đã viết trên bảng.
- Đội nào có nhiều đáp án đúng sẽ thắng cuộc.

Lời dẫn:

- How are you today? Are you ready to begin the lesson with a game?
- Let's play 'Brainstorming race'.
- Team A uses blue chalk and team B uses yellow chalk. Take turns to write as many answers as possible into the 2 columns on the board.

<i>Good things to do in class</i>	<i>Bad things to do in class</i>
<i>Listen to the teacher</i>	<i>Talk loudly</i>
<i>Be quiet</i>	<i>Play games</i>
...	...

- Imagine you want your friend to listen to the teacher. What do you say?
- What do you say if you want your friend not to talk loudly?

Hoạt động 2: Structure with 'should/ shouldn't' (15 - 17 minutes)

a. Elicit the model sentences

- Well, look at this picture.
- What is Nam wearing? (a raincoat)
- Why? (because it's raining)
- What does his mother say to him? (Nam, you shouldn't wet the floor. You should take your raincoat off first)
- What do 'should' and 'shouldn't' mean?
- Does his mother say 'should take off' or 'should to take off'?
- When do you use 'should' and 'shouldn't'? (to give advice)
- What is the difference between 'should' and 'shouldn't'?
- OK, I'd like one of you to read the information of the Remember Box in your book.

should and shouldn't



b. Practice with 'should/ shouldn't'


Exercise 1&2 (p. 61)

– Can you recognize the good things we should do and the bad things we shouldn't do? Let's practise with Exercise 1&2 in your book.

– Do the exercise individually, then compare in pairs before we check together, please!

1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with **should** or **shouldn't**.

	
<p>1. Children _____ climb trees.</p>	<p>2. We _____ help old people.</p>
	
<p>3. Students _____ cheat at exams.</p>	<p>4. We _____ clean our house before Tet.</p>



Remember!

We use _____ for things that are good to do.

We use _____ for things that are bad to do.

Key:

- + Children shouldn't climb trees.
- + We should help old people.
- + Students shouldn't cheat at exams.
- + We should clean our house before Tet.

2 At the TV studio, Phong sees these signs. Complete the sentences with **should** or **shouldn't**.

	
<p>1. You _____ keep quiet.</p>	<p>2. You _____ eat or drink.</p>
	
<p>3. You _____ knock before you enter.</p>	<p>4. You _____ run in the studio.</p>

- + You should keep quiet.
- + You shouldn't eat or drink.
- + You should knock before you enter.
- + You shouldn't run in the studio.

Exercise 3 (p. 62)

– Now, let's talk about our Tet activities. Work in pairs to do Exercise 3, please.

3 Now look at these Tet activities. Tick (✓) the activities children **should** do at Tet. Cross (X) the activities they **shouldn't**



1. behave well



2. eat lots of sweets



3. plant trees



4. break things



5. go out with friends



6. make a wish



7. fight



8. play cards all night

– Have you got any new words? Can you look at the pictures carefully and guess the meaning of these words?

(to) behave well

(to) break things

(to) fight

(to) play cards

– Now, let's check with the game 'Lucky numbers'!

1 	2 	3 	4 
5 	6 	7 Lucky Number!	8 

Key:

1. We shouldn't fight.

2. We shouldn't break things.

3. We should go out with friends.

4. We shouldn't play cards all night.

5. We should plant trees.

6. We should behave well.

7. Lucky Number

8. We shouldn't eat a lot of sweets.

Hoạt động 3: Structure with 'will/ won't' (18 – 20 minutes)

a. Elicit the model sentences

– Do you think you should only do good activities at Tet? Now read Phong's letter to Tom and find out about his activities at Tet.

1 Read Phong's letter to Tom.



Hi Tom,
How are you?
Tet is coming.
It's our New Year celebration.
Before Tet, my father will repaint our house. I will go shopping with Mum. We won't buy fireworks. We will buy red envelopes for lucky money and some new clothes. At Tet, we won't buy *banh chung*. I will help my parents cook *banh chung* in a very big pot. I can't wait!
I'll write again soon to tell you more!
Phong

- Is it Tet now?
- Yes, Tet is just coming.
- Are there activities before Tet? (Yes, there are)
- Are Phong and his family ready for Tet? Which sentences tell you this? Underline these sentences.
- Who can read aloud all the sentences?
- What do 'will' and 'won't' mean? What verb tense is used?
- Do we say 'his father will repaint' or 'his father will repaints'?
- Yes. Who can help me read aloud the 'Watch out' box?
- And when do we use 'will' and 'won't'? (to talk about future activities)

Watch out!
Don't use 'to' with will or won't.
Example:
Dad will to repaint the house. X
Dad will repaint the house. ✓

b. Practice with 'will/ won't': Exercise 2&3 (p. 62)

- Do Exercise 2 & 3 in your notebook, please.
- I would like two of you to come to the board and write into the 2 columns, and we'll check later, alright?

2 Use the information from the letter and write full sentences in the two columns.

Will	Won't
<p><i>Example:</i> My father will repaint our house.</p>	<p><i>Example:</i> We won't buy <i>banh chung</i>.</p>

Key:

Will
Phong will visit his relatives. He will go out (with his friends). He will get (some) lucky money.
Won't
He won't study (for long). He won't give a present.

– Now we'll move to Exercise 3.

3 Phong is thinking about his Tet. Write sentences about what he **will and **won't** do.**



Example:

1. Phong will visit his relatives.

– Remember to add more words to write complete sentences about Phong's activities.

– Finish the exercise in your notebook and I'll call some of you to write your sentences on the board so that we can check together.

Homework (2 minutes)

1. Do Exercise 4 – p. 62 – Student's Book.
2. Do Exercise B3 & C1, 2 (p. 41, 42) – Workbook
2. Prepare for the next lesson.

Trình bày bảng

Unit 6 – Our Tet holiday

Lesson 3 – A closer look 2

I. Brainstorming Race

II. Grammar

1. should/ shouldn't: Giving advice
2. will/ won't: Future activities

III. Homework

Giáo án 4: Unit 6: Our Tet holiday

LESSON 4: COMMUNICATION

I. Objectives:

By the end of the lesson, students can get further information about how people in different countries celebrate New Year.




II. Procedures: Các bước tiến hành

Hoạt động 1: Warm-up (5 minutes)


Phương án 1: Pelmanism (Names of countries)

– Have you ever been to another country?

– Do you recognize the flag of each country in the world? Let's try this game: Pelmanism

			
<i>Viet Nam</i>	<i>Holland</i>	<i>Japan</i>	<i>the USA</i>
			
<i>Scotland</i>	<i>Thailand</i>	<i>Korea</i>	<i>Australia</i>

Key:

			
<i>Australia</i>	<i>Viet Nam</i>	<i>Scotland</i>	<i>Japan</i>
			
<i>Holland</i>	<i>Korea</i>	<i>Thailand</i>	<i>the USA</i>

GV có thể hỏi HS và chốt lại tên các quốc gia (bằng Tiếng Việt).

Phương án 2: Kim's game

- Have you ever been to another country?
- Do you recognize the flag of each country in the world? Look at the pictures in 20 seconds and you have 2 minutes to write down the names of the countries.
- Which team having more correct names wins the game. Are you ready?



GV có thể hỏi HS và chốt lại tên các quốc gia (bằng Tiếng Việt).

GV có thể hỏi HS và chốt lại tên các quốc gia (bằng Tiếng Việt).

Phương án 3: Matching

- Have you ever been to another country?
- Can you recognize the flag of each country in the world?
- Work in groups of four and do Exercise 1, p. 63, Student's Book. Which group having the first and correct answers will win the game.

Hoạt động 2: Name of nationalities (10 minutes)

- We all come from Viet Nam and we are Vietnamese. Vietnamese is our nationality. What does this mean in Vietnamese?
- Now work in pairs to match the countries with their nationalities.

1 Match the flags with the countries. Then match the countries with their nationalities.



Viet Nam, Holland, Japan, the USA, Scotland, Thailand, Korea, Australia	Japanese, American, Scottish, Vietnamese, Australian, Dutch, Thai, Korean
---	---

Key:

- 1. Holland - Dutch
- 2. Japan - Japanese
- 3. The USA - American
- 4. Australia - Australian
- 5. Thailand - Thai
- 6. Viet Nam - Vietnamese
- 7. Scotland - Scottish
- 8. Korea - Korean

Key:

- 1. Holland
- 2. Japan
- 3. The USA
- 4. Australia
- 5. Thailand
- 6. Viet Nam
- 7. Scotland
- 8. Korea

- Now, I'd like to see whether you can remember the names of some countries and their nationalities or not. Let's play the game 'Who's faster?'

- GV chia lớp thành 4 đội và có thể thực hiện 1 trong 2 phương án sau:

+ Hoặc HS nhìn lần lượt cờ các nước trên màn hình và đọc to tên quốc tịch tương ứng

+ Hoặc GV có thể chuẩn bị 8 chiếc mũ giấy có dính cờ 8 quốc gia (Trong Bài tập 1) và cho 8 HS đội mũ. 8 HS lần lượt xuất hiện không theo thứ

tự sắp xếp nào. Các đội sẽ nói tên nước dựa trên chiếc mũ HS đang đội.

– Đội nào giờ tay trả lời trước và có đáp đúng sẽ được điểm.

– There are 4 teams. Look at the screen and call out the right nationality.

Or I divide our class into 4 teams. Look at the 8 flags on the hats our friends are wearing and call out the right nationality.

The one who is faster will get one point for each correct answer!

Hoạt động 3: New Year's celebration around the world (25 minutes)

– Look at the clothes/ costumes people are wearing in each picture. Can you guess the country they come from?

3 People in different countries celebrate New Year differently. Match the four groups of people with the pictures.

The H'Mong, Viet Nam The Japanese, Japan
The Scottish, Scotland The Thai, Thailand



Key:

Picture 1: The Scottish, Scotland

Picture 2: The Thai, Thailand

Picture 3: The H'mong, Viet Nam

Picture 4: The Japanese, Japan

– GV có thể giúp HS tìm được đáp án qua một số câu hỏi gợi mở, dựa vào vốn hiểu biết xã hội của các em, ví dụ: Which country celebrates their New Year in April, the hottest time of the year? / Who do you think may throw water over people on New Year's Day? (Thailand)

Key:

a. H'mong

b. Thai

c. Japanese

d. Scottish

– In order to understand the passages about celebrating New Year more clearly, try to guess the meaning of some new words:

5 Find and check the meaning of some new words as they are used in the text by matching them with the definitions.

text	word	definition
a	feathers	an adult male chicken
a	rooster	the covers of a rooster, chicken or bird
c	remove	the first person to enter your home after New Year's Eve
d	first footer	take away

– You'd better underline the words first, then read the whole sentences which contain the words, after that, guess the meaning from context.

Key:

a. feathers	the covers of a rooster, chicken or bird
b. rooster	an adult male chicken
c. remove	take away
d. first footer	the first person to enter your home after New Year's Eve

Sau khi đã thống nhất đáp án với HS, GV hỏi lại hoặc cung cấp cho HS nghĩa tiếng Việt của các từ mới trên.

– You've already read about different ways to celebrate New Year in some countries. Do you find it interesting? Let's play 'Guessing Game.'

6 Group work

Each student chooses two facts from the four paragraphs he/she is most interested in. Write them down and take turns to read them aloud to his/her group. The group decides which group of people he/she is talking about.

– But remember to write short and simple sentences only, and try to use the new words you have already learnt. For example: I like the way people throw water over people on New Year's Day. And I also think the first footer on New Year's Day decides the family's luck for the rest of the year. Can you guess which group of people am I talking about?

Homework (2 minutes)

1. Do Exercise C2 (p. 43) - Workbook.
2. Prepare for the next lesson.

Trình bày bảng

Unit 6 – Our Tet holiday

Lesson 4 – Communication

I. Pelmanism

II. Names of countries and nationalities

1. Holland – Dutch
2. Japan – Japanese
3. The USA – American
4. Australia – Australian
5. Thailand – Thai
6. Viet Nam – Vietnamese
7. Scotland – Scottish
8. Korea – Korean

III. New Year's celebrations around the world

Vocabulary

- feathers
- rooster
- remove
- first footer

IV. Homework

Giáo án 5: Unit 6: Our Tet holiday

LESSON 5: SKILLS 1

I. Objectives:

By the end of the lesson, students can:

- understand the way people in some different countries celebrate their New Year
- talk about their intentions and give advice for their Tet holiday






II. Procedures: Các bước tiến hành

Hoạt động 1: Warm-up (5 minutes)

Phương án 1: Chơi trò chơi 'Noughts and Crosses'

– In the previous lesson, we studied different countries with different nationalities. We also read information about New Year's celebrations in different countries.

– Now join this game to check how much you can remember from the lesson: Noughts and Crosses

Questions	Answers
1. When do people in Thailand celebrate their New Year?	1. In April.
2. Which country is it and what is its nationality? 	2. Scotland.
3. Which group of people stick red feathers from the rooster to the drawings of the Sun in their houses?	3. The H'mong, Viet Nam.
4. Which country is it and what is its nationality? 	4. Australia – Australian
5. Which country is it and what is its nationality? 	5. Holland – Dutch
6. In what country do temples ring the bells to remove their bad actions from the previous year?	6. Japan
7. Which country is it and what is its nationality? 	7. Korea – Korean
8. In Scottish people's opinion, who decides the family's luck for the rest of the year?	8. The first footer does.
9. Which country is it and what is its nationality? 	The USA

1	2	3
4	5	6
7	8	9

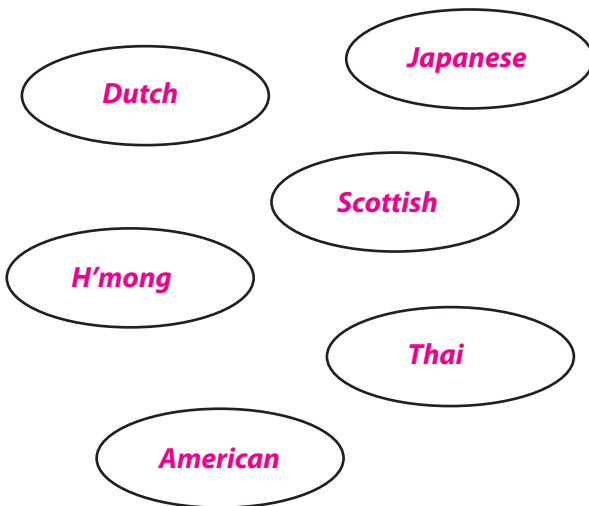
Phương án 2: Slap the board

– In the previous lesson, we studied different countries with different nationalities. We also read information about New Year’s celebrations in different countries.

– Now join this game to check how much you can remember from the lesson: Slap the board

– 6 members from each team will come here and stand in two lines in front of the board.

– Be quiet and listen to my questions carefully. Slap the correct answers as quickly as possible. Who is quicker and gets more correct answers will be the winner. Are you ready? Let’s start now!



1. These people come from the USA. (American)
2. They believe that the first footer on New Year’s Day decides the family’s luck for the rest of the year. (Scottish)
3. On New Year’s Eve, they stick red feathers from the rooster to the drawings of the Sun in their houses.(H’mong)
4. They believe that the ringing bells at midnight on December 31 can remove their bad actions from the previous year. (Japanese)
5. What is the nationality of the people coming from Holland? (Dutch)

6. They believe that throwing water over people will bring a lot of rain in the New Year. (Thai)

Hoạt động 2: Reading skill (20 - 23 minutes)

– Well, and you’ll find more information about different ways to celebrate New Year in our reading passages today.

– Look at the pictures. These children are talking about their New Year.



- + What is his/ her name?
- + Which country does he/ she come from?
- + Do you know anything about his/ her country?
- + When do people in this country celebrate their New Year?
- + How do they welcome their New Year? Do you know anything about their traditions and customs?
- + What do people often wish or expect to happen on the first day of the New Year?

– Make a guess before you read the passage: Predict who the following statements refer to:

- A. Russ
- B. Wu
- C. Mai

Statements	Who
1. A dog is a good present.	
2. The child welcomes the New Year at Times Square.	
3. The child gets lucky money.	
4. Giving rice is wishing for enough food.	
5. The child dresses beautifully.	
6. One shouldn’t eat shrimps at the New Year festival.	

– Now open your books, read the passages and check your predictions.

1 Children in different countries are talking about their New Year. Read the passages.



I often go to Times Square with my parents to welcome the New Year. When the clock strikes midnight, colourful fireworks light up the sky. Everybody around is cheering and singing happily. I love that moment so much.



I love the first day of the New Year most. After getting up we dress beautifully and go to the main room. There my grandparents sit on a sofa. We bow and say our wishes to them. They will give us lucky money in red envelopes. After that, we go out and have a day full of fun, good food and laughter.



I learnt some beliefs about Tet from my parents. At Tet people present rice to wish for enough food, red fruits for happiness. Dogs are lucky animals. Their barking sounds like 'gold'. But one shouldn't present a cat because its cry sounds like the Vietnamese word for poverty. Don't eat shrimps. They move backwards and you will not succeed in the New Year.

Key:

1C – 2A – 3B – 4C – 5B – 6C

– In order to understand the text more carefully, I would like you to read the text one more time, then underline and guess the meaning of these words. What do they mean in Vietnamese?

1. (to) strike
2. (to) cheer
3. belief (n)
4. poverty (n)
5. shrimp (n)
6. (to) move backwards

– Tùy trình độ HS khác nhau mà GV có thể đưa ra các từ mới khác nhau, tuy nhiên, GV cần động viên, khuyến khích và giúp HS hình thành kỹ năng đoán nghĩa từ dựa vào văn cảnh trong câu.

– GV có thể áp dụng các thủ thuật khác nhau để kiểm tra lại từ vựng: Rub Out and Remember/ What and Where/ ...

– Can you remember all the information from the text now? Don't look at the passages and do Exercise 3.

3 Test your memory! Tick (✓) the things which appear in the passages, and cross (X) the ones which don't.

a. lucky money	b. a day full of fun
c. a cat's cry	d. house decoration
e. fireworks	f. say wishes
g. cheering and singing	h. visit relatives
i. giving rice	j. Trafalgar Square

Key:

The things which appear in the passages	a. lucky money b. a day full of fun c. a cat's cry e. fireworks f. say wishes g. cheering and singing i. giving rice
The things which don't appear in the passages	d. house decoration h. visit relatives j. Trafalgar Square

Hoạt động 3: Speaking (15 - 18 minutes)

a. Intentions for this New Year

– From the passages above, you can know more about some practices and beliefs. What about your intentions for this New Year? Work in pairs and take turns to talk about your intentions.

4 The following practices and beliefs are from the passages in 1. Talk to your friends and say which one(s) you will do or won't do this New Year.

Examples:

1. Go to Times Square to welcome the New Year.
→ I won't go to the Time Square to welcome the New Year.
2. Have a time full of fun.
→ I will have a time full of fun.
3. Get lucky money from your grandparents.
4. Give your cousin a cat as a present.
5. Eat shrimps.
6. Cheer and sing when the clock strikes midnight.
7. Dress beautifully.
8. Watch fireworks.

5 Work in groups

Write two popular beliefs you know about the New Year and tell your partners.

Belief 1. _____

Belief 2. _____

Đối với HS khá giỏi, GV có thể động viên các em đưa thêm các hoạt động khác, ngoài những thông tin gợi ý trong bài đọc.

b. Popular beliefs about the New Year

– From your intentions, I can see that you choose good things and avoid bad things to do at Tet. Why?

– Because we have some beliefs. Do you know any popular New Year beliefs?

– Discuss in group of 4 or 6 to tell about these beliefs, please!



– **Suggested answers:** People believe that one should wear new clothes on the New Year's Day. This would mean receiving more new garments during the year. Red clothing is preferred for New Year's Day since red is considered a happy colour and is sure to bring the wearer a brighter future.

c. Good/ Bad things to do at Tet

- Because we have beliefs, we have to try to do good things and avoid bad things. Is that right?
- What structure do we use to talk about things that are good/ bad to do?
- Work in groups of 4 to do this exercise.

6 Look at the list. Discuss with your friends what you should or shouldn't do at Tet.



play games all night	get up early	invite friends home
buy some salt	bring home a black cat	ask for lucky money
play music loud	break things	eat shrimps on New Year's Day

Example:

- Student A: We should make a wish.
 Student B: I agree. But we shouldn't get up early.
 Student C: No, we shouldn't. We should invite friends home, shouldn't we?
 Student D: Yes, I think we should.

Homework (2 minutes)

1. Learn the vocabulary by heart.
2. Do Exercise D2, 3 (p. 44, 45) – Workbook
3. Prepare for the next lesson: Skills 2

Trình bày bảng

Unit 6 – Our Tet Holiday

Lesson 5 – Skills 1

I. Noughts and Crosses

II. Reading

New words

- (to) strike
- (to) cheer
- belief (n)
- poverty (n)
- shrimp (n)
- (to) move backwards

III. Speaking

1. Intentions for this New Year: will/ won't
2. Popular beliefs about the New Year
3. Good/ bad things to do at Tet: should/ shouldn't

Giáo án 6: Unit 6: Our Tet holiday

LESSON 6: SKILLS 2

I. Objectives:

By the end of the lesson, students can:

- listen for specific ideas
- write an email about Tet holiday

II. Procedures: Các bước tiến hành

Hoạt động 1: Warm-up (5 minutes)

Phương án 1: 'Wordsquare'

- GV phát phiếu học tập có ô chữ cho từng HS/ nhóm. HS làm bài cá nhân/ nhóm.
- GV gọi một số HS nộp bài chấm điểm và chữa cho cả lớp. Nhóm nào hoàn thành trước và có đủ đáp án đúng sẽ thắng cuộc.

B	I	S	C	U	I	T
C	L	O	T	H	E	S
R	V	S	W	E	E	T
I	F	R	U	I	T	E
C	S	A	L	T	I	A
E	O	T	R	E	E	E
I	F	L	O	W	E	R

– Look at the wordsquare and find 10 hidden words from this.

Possible answers:

→ biscuit, clothes, sweet, fruit, salt, tree, flower

↓ rice, tea, tie

– Who can read aloud all the words you find?

– Imagine you are going shopping. Do you think you'll buy these things?

– Well, Mai and her mother are going shopping for Tet. What will they buy? Listen and give your answers, please.

Phương án 2: Chơi trò chơi 'Bingo'

– Imagine you are going shopping for Tet. Think of 5 things you may buy and write down into a piece of paper.


– I am going to read a list of words. Listen to me. If you have the same words, cross them out. The first person crossing out all 5 things shouts "Bingo" and wins the game. Are you ready? Start now!

peach blossom, fruit, chocolate, flower, chicken, rice, salt, clothes, sweet, watermelon, apple, biscuit, apricot blossom

– Well, Mai and her mother are going shopping for Tet. Will they buy the same things as you? Listen and give your answers, please.

Hoạt động 2: Listening skill (12 - 15 minutes)

Listening

 Mai and her mother are going shopping for Tet. Listen and tick (✓) the things they will buy.

1. peach blossoms

2. banh chung

3. new clothes

4. a tie

5. sweets

6. fruit

7. chocolate biscuits

– Remember to pay attention to the positive and negative forms of the verbs and other signals for positive/ negative answers, eg: yes, dear/ we don't/ no, dear ...

– Let's check the answers:

1. peach blossoms

3. new clothes

4. a tie

5. sweets

7. chocolate biscuits

– But who will Mai and her mother buy these things for? Let's continue with the next exercise:

2 Listen again and write the names of the things they will buy for the people in column A.

A. People	B. Things
1. Mai and her brother	
2. Mai's dad	
3. Mai's grandparents	

Key:

1. Mai and her brother – clothes
2. Mai's dad – a tie
3. Mai's grandparents – some sweets

Hoạt động 3: Writing skill (23 – 25 minutes)

Mai and her mother has some preparations for their Tet holiday. What about you? Have you got any intentions to do at Tet? Do you think about good or bad things you should or shouldn't do on this occasion? Let's do this writing exercise:

3 Now write an e-mail to a friend about your Tet holiday. Include what you **will** and **won't** do. Also include things people **should** and **shouldn't** do. Use your notes from Speaking and the rest of the unit to help you.

To: mi@fastmail.com;
superphong@bamboo.com
Subject: Weekend away!

Dear _____,

I feel very _____. Our Tet holiday is coming.

This year I will _____.

I won't _____.

At Tet, people should _____.

People shouldn't _____.

Write soon,

- GV cho HS hoàn thành bài tập cá nhân. HS hoàn thành xong bài viết có thể trao đổi bài viết để tự học hỏi và sửa lỗi.
- GV gọi một số HS khá đọc bài mẫu và rút kinh nghiệm, chữa lỗi sai trước cả lớp.

Homework (2 minutes)

1. Finish your writing in the notebook (if you don't have enough time in class).
2. Do Exercise E1, 2, 3 (p. 46, 47 – Workbook)
3. Revise the vocabulary to prepare for Looking back.

Trình bày bảng

Unit 6 – Our Tet Holiday

Lesson 6 – Skills 2

I. Wordsquare

II. Listening

III. Writing

Write an email to a friend about your Tet holiday.

IV. Homework

Giáo án 7: Unit 6: Our Tet holiday

LESSON 7: LOOKING BACK - PROJECT

I. Objectives:

By the end of the lesson, students can:

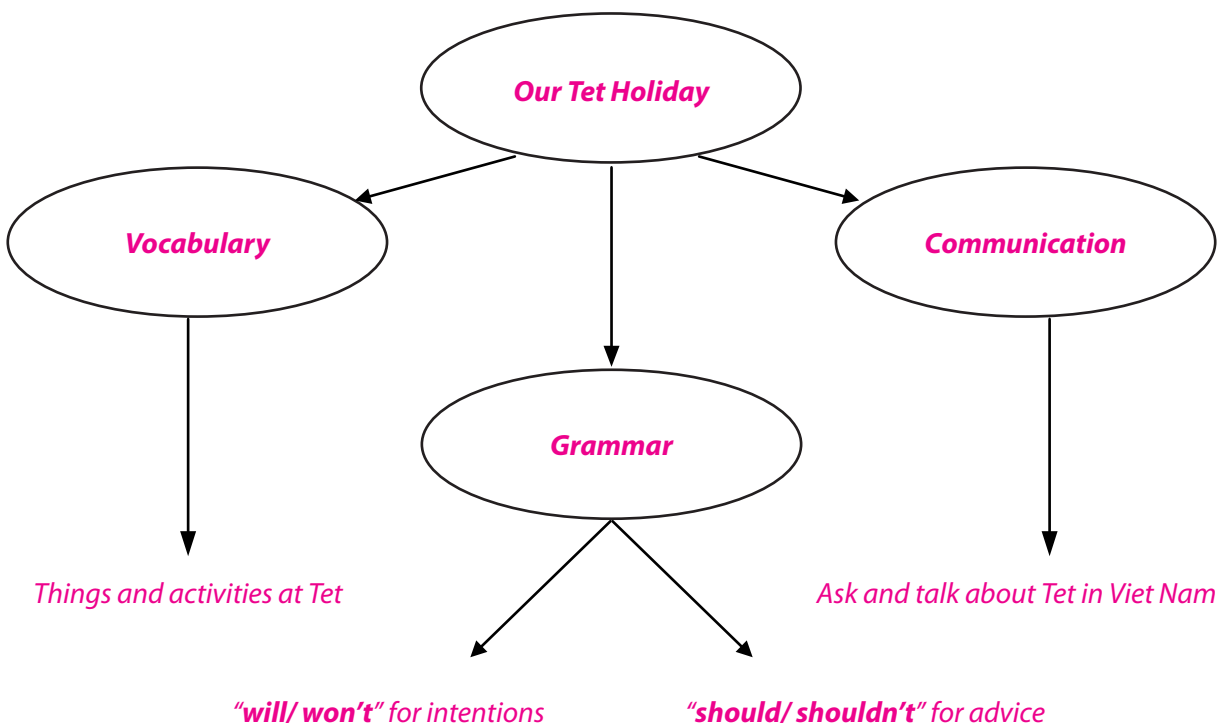
- use words and phrases for Tet (things and activities)
- use *will/ won't* for intentions or future activities
- use *should/ shouldn't* for advice
- ask and talk about Tet in Viet Nam

II. Procedures: Các bước tiến hành

- GV khuyến khích HS làm việc cá nhân hoàn thành các bài tập trong SGK ngay trên lớp để tự đánh giá xem mình đã lĩnh hội được toàn bộ kiến thức đã học hay chưa, từ đó, cải thiện những phần HS chưa nắm vững.
- GV động viên HS không mở lại sách hoặc vở khi làm các bài tập trong tiết học này.

Hoạt động 1: Network/ Mind map (5 minutes)

- Before you practise doing the exercise, I would like you to have a look back at all the lessons you have already studied in this unit.
- Draw a mind map into your notebook, so that you can remember everything more clearly, dear!



Hoạt động 2: Practice (15 to 20 minutes)

- Try to finish all the exercises in your book individually, then compare in pairs before I check in front of the class, right?

– Try as hard as you can to remember all the things presented in this unit and don't refer back to the 6 previous lessons. If you have any difficulties while doing your exercises, don't hesitate to ask me or your partner. All right?

LOOKING BACK

Vocabulary

1 Draw lines to match the actions on the left with the things on the right.

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1. go 2. buy 3. give 4. cook 5. visit 6. clean 7. grow 8. plant 9. make 10. hang 11. watch 12. break 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. a wish b. fireworks c. special food d. lucky money e. a present f. the furniture g. trees h. flowers i. relatives j. to a pagoda k. the calendar l. things
---	--

2 Game: "About or Not about Tet?"

<p>About Tet</p> <hr/> <hr/> <hr/>	<p>Not about Tet</p> <hr/> <hr/> <hr/>
------------------------------------	--

Five volunteers stand in front of the class. They take turns to read aloud each phrase from the list. The quickest student with the right answer gets one point for one right answer. The student with the highest score wins.

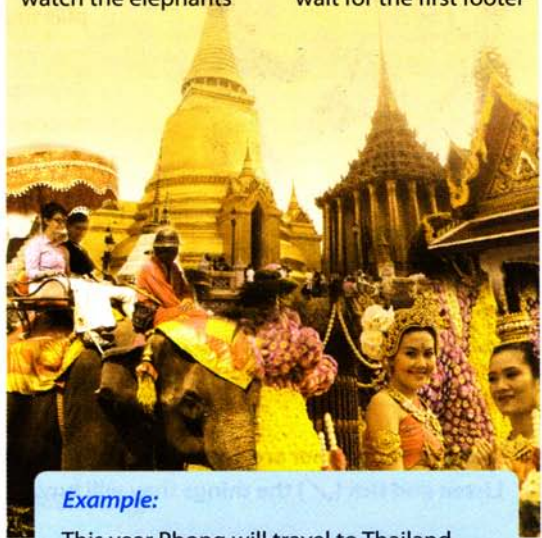
Example:

Volunteer A:	play games
Student A:	about Tet
Volunteer B:	go swimming
Student B:	not about Tet

Grammar

3 Phong is visiting Thailand at their New Year Festival. Look at the list of what he will or will not do. Then write out complete sentences.

Will	Won't
travel by plane	stay at home
wear shorts and a T-shirt	eat <i>banh chung</i>
get wet	go to school
throw water at others	get lucky money
watch the elephants	wait for the first footer



Example:

This year Phong will travel to Thailand.

Phong won't eat *banh chung* in Thailand.

4 Tom is asking Phong what children in Viet Nam **should** or **shouldn't** do at Tet. Listen and fill in the summary with **should** or **shouldn't**.

Phong thinks that children in Viet Nam (1) _____ visit their grandparents at Tet. They (2) _____ also wish them good health. To make their house beautiful they (3) _____ help decorate it with flowers and pictures. But children (4) _____ eat too much. They (5) _____ ask for lucky money, either. One more thing: they (6) _____ make a wish at Tet, too.

Communication

5 Rearrange the words in each sentence to make New Year wishes and greetings.

Example:

I/good health and good luck/wish/you
I wish you good health and good luck.

1. I/a Happy New Year/you/wish/.
2. Have/with/great year/your studies/a/!
3. wish/I/in your career/you/success/.
4. wish/I/a joyful/year/you/.

Finished! Now you can...	✓	✓✓	✓✓✓
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • use words and phrases for Tet (things and activities) • use will/won't for intentions • use should/shouldn't for advice • ask and talk about Tet in Viet Nam 			

Key:

1. Vocabulary

1.1 Exercise 1 (p. 66)

- | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. go – j. to a pagoda | 7. grow – h. flowers |
| 2. buy – e. a present | 8. plant – g. trees |
| 3. give – d. lucky money | 9. make – a. a wish |
| 4. cook – c. special food | 10. hang – k. the calendar |
| 5. visit – i. relatives | 11. watch – b. fireworks |
| 6. clean – f. the furniture | 12. break – l. things |

1.2 Exercise 2 (p. 66)

Students' answers

2. Grammar

2.1 Exercise 3 (p. 66)

<i>Will</i>	<i>Won't</i>
Phong will travel by plane.	Phong won't stay at home.
Phong will wear shorts and a T-shirt.	Phong won't eat <i>banh chung</i> .
Phong will get wet.	Phong won't go to school.
Phong will throw water at others.	Phong won't get lucky money.
Phong will watch the elephants.	Phong won't wait for the first footer.

2.2 Exercise 4 (p. 66)

- | | | |
|--------------|--------------|-----------|
| 1. should | 2. should | 3. should |
| 4. shouldn't | 5. shouldn't | 6. should |

3. Communication: Exercise 5 (p. 67)

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 1. I wish you a Happy New Year. | 2. Have a great year with your studies. |
| 3. I wish you success in your career. | 4. I wish you a joyful year. |

4. Self-assessment

– I see that you're working very hard today. Now check how much you have gained from this unit, so that I can help you improve your English.

– Finish your self-assessment box and then tell me your result, please! Which part are you best at? Which one do you want to improve? ...

Hoạt động 3: Project (20 to 25 minutes)

– The New Year is coming. Think about you and the world around you. Do you have any dreams for you, or your family, your friends, or the people around you?

– For the Project today, we'll talk about our dreams for the future.

PROJECT I have a dream!

This New Year...



Write down in big letters the three dreams you have for this New Year. Share them with your friends.

GV cho HS viết lên các tấm poster, sau đó cho HS đính các tấm poster của mình xung quanh tường lớp học, hoặc trao đổi poster trong nhóm và cùng chia sẻ ý tưởng.

GV khuyến khích và động viên những HS có ý tưởng sáng tạo, mang tính tích cực và có tính cộng đồng cao.

Homework (2 minutes)

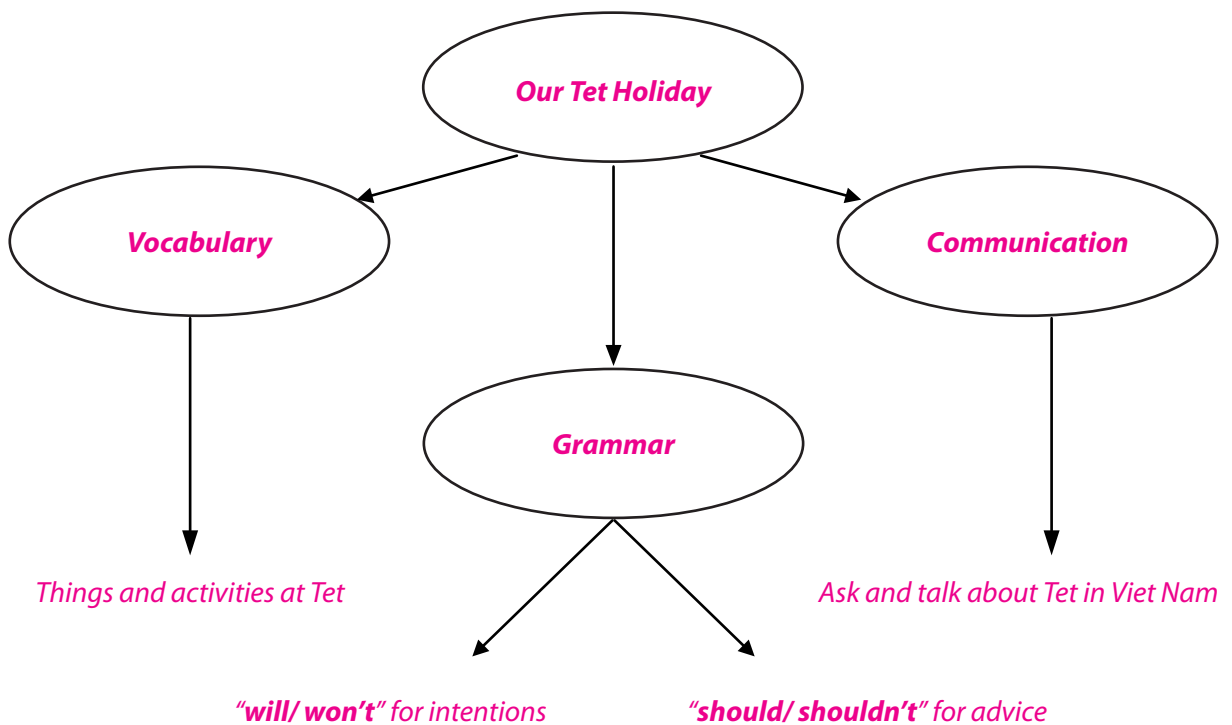
1. Share your project with the other groups. Study your friends' project.
2. Prepare for Revision of Unit 4, 5, 6 and the first semester test.

Trình bày bảng

Unit 6 – Our Tet Holiday

Lesson 7 – Looking back & Project

I. Revision: Network



II. Practice

III. Project

"I have a dream!"

Chịu trách nhiệm xuất bản:
Chủ tịch Hội đồng Thành viên **MẠC VĂN THIÊN**
Tổng Giám đốc **GS. TS. VŨ VĂN HÙNG**
Phó Tổng Giám đốc kiêm Tổng biên tập **TS. PHAN XUÂN THÀNH**

Tổ chức bản thảo và chịu trách nhiệm nội dung:
Phó Tổng biên tập **NGUYỄN THÀNH ANH**
Tổng Giám đốc Công ty CP Đầu tư và Phát triển Giáo dục Hà Nội **VŨ BÁ KHÁNH**

Biên tập lần đầu: **PHẠM QUỐC CƯỜNG**
Biên tập tái bản: **HUỶNH KIM TUẤN**
Trình bày bìa: **PHẠM THỊ MINH THU**
Sửa bản in: **EDIBOOKS**
Chế bản: **TẠ XUÂN PHƯƠNG**

Bản quyền ©2016 Công ty CP Đầu tư và Phát triển Giáo dục Hà Nội

THIẾT KẾ BÀI GIẢNG TIẾNG ANH 6 - TẬP 1 (Sách kèm đĩa)

Mã số: T6N40a6-ĐTH

Mã ISBN: 978-604-0-07705-9

In 3.000 cuốn (QĐ: ...), khổ 19 x 27 cm

In tại:

Số đăng kí KHXB: 15 - 2016/CXBIPH/295 - 1895/GD

Số QĐXB:

In xong và nộp lưu chiểu tháng ... năm 2016